English Vocabulary in Use

pre-intermediate and intermediate

Stuart Redman
Contents

Introduction 4

Learning
1 Learning and revising with this book
2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook
3 Using a dictionary
4 English language words
5 Problems with pronunciation
6 Classroom language

Examples
un-, in-, dis-, im-, re-
tion, -ity, -ness, -ment
-ive, -y, -able, -ful, -less
to stay / a stay; a look / to look
alarm clock; credit card; baby-sitter
easy-going, good-looking, well-paid

Word formation
7 Prefixes
8 Noun suffixes
9 Adjective suffixes
10 Zero affixation
11 Compound nouns
12 Compound adjectives

Example
un-, in-, dis-, im-, re-

Phrase building
13 Collocation (word partners)
14 Verb or adjective + preposition
15 Preposition + noun
16 Phrasal verbs: form and meaning
17 Phrasal verbs: grammar and style
18 Idioms and fixed expressions
19 Make, do, have, take
20 Give, keep, break, catch, see
21 Get: uses and expressions
22 Go: uses and expressions
23 Apologies, excuses and thanks
24 Requests, invitations and suggestions
25 Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing
26 Specific situations and special occasions

Example
a strong accent, miss the bus
listen (to), keen (on), good (at)
on holiday, by mistake, on TV
lie down, get over sth., take off
put on, get by, make sth. up
never mind, take a short cut, What’s up?
make progress, do homework, have a rest
keep a record, break the law, catch a bus
get a job, get married, get up
go deaf, go for a drink, have a go
sorry I’m late, I got held up, thanks a lot
could you ...? I’d love to, how about ...?
what do you think of ...? personally, according to
hi, good luck, nice to meet you, happy birthday

Parts of speech (special problems)
27 Uncountable nouns and plural nouns
28 Verbs + -ing form or infinitive
29 Verb patterns
30 Adjectives
31 Prepositions: place
32 Adverbs: frequency and degree

Example
information (U), trousers (pl)
enjoy, can’t stand, refuse
verb + object, verb + ‘that’ clause
big vs. huge, boring vs. bored
on the table, next to the church
hardly ever, quite, almost
Connecting and linking

33 Time and sequence
34 Addition and contrast
35 Similarities, differences and conditions
36 Reason, purpose and result

when, while, after, first of all, finally
in addition, although, in spite of
similar to, compared with/to, unless
as, so, because (of), as a result

Topics

The world around us
37 The physical world
38 Weather
39 Using the land
40 Animals and insects
41 Countries, nationalities and language

oceans, mountains, deserts, hurricane
showers, cloudy, fog, pour with rain
plants, agriculture, mining, gold
lion, wild, spider, rabbit
Sweden, Swiss, Arabic

People
42 The body and what it does
43 Describing people's appearance
44 Describing character
45 Human feelings and actions
46 Family and friends
47 Ages and stages

bend your knees, bite your nails
tall and blond with broad shoulders
shy, friendly, unpleasant
pride, jealous (of), stare, whisper
niece, relatives, surname, best friend
teenager, grow up, adult, pregnant

Daily life
48 Daily routines
49 Homes and buildings
50 Around the home 1
51 Around the home 2
52 Everyday problems
53 Money
54 Health: illness and disease
55 Health: injuries
56 Clothes
57 Shops and shopping
58 Food
59 Cooking and restaurants
60 Town and country
61 On the road
62 Transport

get up, leave home, go to sleep
flat, on the ground floor, roof
lounge, on the sofa, food mixer
washbasin, tidy, hoover, polish
it's not working, drop, break
coins, borrow, I can't afford it
flu, sore throat, sneezing
twist my ankle, bleeding, bruise
shirt, trousers, take off, get dressed
chemist, shop assistant, I'm being served
carrot, peach, lamb
fry, salty, main course, book a table
suburbs, noisy, fields
turn left, traffic lights, accident
coach, bus stop, platform, get off

Work
63 Work: duties, conditions and pay
64 Jobs
65 The career ladder
66 In the office and in the factory
67 Business and finance
68 Sales and marketing

What do you do?, salary, do overtime
dentist, lawyer, plumber
be promoted, resign, unemployed
show sb. around, assembly line, goods
turnover, make a profit, rise and fall
market share, competitors, image

Leisure and entertainment
69 Hobbies
70 Sport 1: games, people and places
71 Sport 2: winning, losing and scoring
72 Cinema and theatre
73 Music, art and literature

photography, play cards, spare time
tennis court, racket, goal, referee
win, draw, latest score, half-time
audience, actor, a thriller
orchestra, composer, painting, novelist
Communication and technology
74 Newspapers
75 Television
76 On the phone
77 Computers

Social concerns
78 Education: school
79 Education: university
80 Law and order
81 Crime
82 Politics
83 Bureaucracy
84 War and peace
85 Pollution and the environment

Tourism
86 Air travel
87 Hotels
88 A sightseeing holiday
89 On the beach and in the country

Notional concepts
90 Time
91 Numbers
92 Distance and dimension
93 Shapes, colours and patterns
94 Partitives
95 The senses

Varieties of English
96 Notices and warnings
97 Vague language
98 American English
99 Formal and informal English
100 Abbreviations and abbreviated words

Answer key 206
Phonetic symbols 246
Pronunciation problems 247
Index 248
Acknowledgements 266

journalist, headline, article
programme, turn on, soap opera
engaged, operator, Is that ...?
screen, software, save, data
primary school, subject, term
do a degree, do research, lecture
court, trial, arrest, guilty
murder, commit a crime, steal
political party, democracy, elect
fill in a form, driving licence, signature
peace talks, attack, terrorism, invade
protect, destroy, recycle, waste
flight, take off, passport control
bill, single room, book, in advance
guidebook, castle, souvenir, take photos
sand, sunbathe, hiking, picnic
for ages, at, on, during, last, recently
two and a half, divide, nought point six
is it far? a long way, deep, width
round, square, pattern, grey, greenish
piece of cake, group of people
smells fresh, tastes like ..., see vs. watch
mind your head, beware of pickpockets
sort of ..., things, stuff
sidewalk, vacation, elevator
purchase/buy, children/kids
MR, UN, VAT, phone, bike, fridge
Introduction

Who is this book for?

*English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate and intermediate)* has been written to help learners at this level to improve their English. It has been designed for students who are studying on their own, but it can also be used by a teacher in the classroom with groups of students.

How is the book organised?

The book has 100 two-page units. The left-hand page explains new words and expressions (most units contain approximately 25 new words or phrases), and the right-hand page gives you a chance to check your understanding through a series of exercises which practise the new vocabulary. In a very limited number of units e.g. Units 18 and 71, the right-hand page also includes a few new words and phrases which are not explained on the left-hand page.

There is an answer key at the back of the book. This not only gives *correct* answers to exercises with ‘right’ or ‘wrong’ solutions, but also *possible answers* and *sample answers* for exercises which do not have ‘right’ or ‘wrong’ solutions.

There is also an index at the back of the book. This lists all the new words and phrases introduced in the book and refers you to the unit or units where these words appear. The index also includes a phonemic transcription for many of the words, and on page 247 you are given special help with the pronunciation of approximately 200 words which present particular problems for many learners of English.

The left-hand page

This is the page that introduces the new vocabulary for each topic or area of language. First of all, the vocabulary is divided into a number of sections (A, B, C, etc.) with simple clear titles; and then within each section, new words are explained using a number of different techniques:

- A short definition. The definition follows directly after the word, or comes at the end of the phrase or sentence; it is in brackets and introduced by the symbol =.
  e.g. unemployed (= without a job); feel like (= want or desire infml)
  The abbreviations *fml* or *infml* tell you if a word is either ‘formal’ or ‘informal’.
- A short explanation. This will be a complete sentence which often includes the new word, e.g. effective. (If something is effective, it works well and produces good results.)
- A synonym or opposite, e.g. terrific (= fantastic); dirty (= clean)
- In a situation. Some words are difficult to define and it is easier to see their meaning when they are put in context. The following is from a text about a motoring accident.
  e.g. ‘The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was badly injured, and both cars were badly damaged.’
- A picture or diagram. This seems the obvious way to explain a large number of concrete nouns and verbs.
  e.g.
  ![carrot]
  go along here and turn left.
For many of the new words there are also sentence examples which show the words in context in order to consolidate their meaning and illustrate any special syntactic features.

My boyfriend gets very **jealous** when I talk to other boys.
The plane appeared in the sky, then suddenly **disappeared** behind a cloud.
He **admitted** stealing the woman’s money. (admit + -ing)
We were very busy but we **managed** to finish by 6 o’clock. (manage + inf.)

Finally, a big effort has been made to introduce new words alongside other words that often appear with them (this is called ‘collocation’).

e.g. miss the bus; a strong accent; the car broke down; it’s vitally important; fasten your seat belt; go on holiday; give someone a hand; to a certain extent, a terrible pain, etc.

### The right-hand page

This page contains the exercises to practise the new vocabulary presented on the left-hand page. In general the first exercise practises the form of some of the new words, and then there are further exercises which focus on the meaning. In most units there is at least one exercise which gives learners a chance to think about and practise new vocabulary in relation to their own lives, and/or a task which invites learners to do something with the vocabulary outside of the book (e.g. 11.4, 14.4, etc.). And in every unit, there is a range of exercise types to help maintain your interest.

### Using the book

The first five units (or first six units if you go to an English class) teach you some important vocabulary, but they also help you with with useful ideas and techniques for vocabulary learning. Do these units first, and then work through the book studying the units which interest you.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Summary of abbreviations and symbols used in the book</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(U)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≠</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AmEng</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[NOT Host the bus]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Learning and revising with this book

Look at Exercise 1 on the next page before you read this page.

A Establish a routine
A routine means doing certain things regularly in the same way. And if you are using this book for self-study (= to study alone), it helps to have a routine. Decide how much time you can spend on the book each day or each week. If you are studying a unit for the first time, try to give yourself at least (= a minimum of) half an hour or forty-five minutes; if you are revising (= looking through a unit a second or third time), five or ten minutes each time is very useful. So, plan longer periods for new units, and shorter periods for revision.

B Working through the book
Do different things to maintain your interest. (= keep your interest high). For example:
- Don’t work through the units in sequence (= in the order they appear in the book): look through the units and choose ones that interest you.
- When you do a unit, you can:
  read the whole of the left-hand page, then do the exercises.
  read part of the left-hand page, then do one or two exercises.
  try the exercises first, then use the left-hand page when you have a problem.
- Be active when you are learning. For example:
  While you are reading the left-hand page, use a highlighter pen to mark new or interesting vocabulary.
  Practise saying the words silently in your head (= without a noise), and also out loud (= making a noise, so it is possible for others to hear), to see if you can pronounce them.
  Put new words in your own notebook using some of the ideas from Unit 2 to do it effectively. (If something is effective, it works well and produces good results.)

C Revision
It is common to learn a word one day, then find you cannot remember it a day later. If you revise regularly (just for short periods), it helps you to remember words and make them part of your ‘active’ vocabulary. Here are some ideas for revising with this book.
- Do exercises in pencil. Check your answers when you have finished, then rub them out (= remove them using a rubber/eraser). Later, come back and do the exercises again, and just use the left-hand page if you cannot remember something.
- When you read a left-hand page for a second time, have a piece of card with you. When you reach a new word in bold which has a definition/explanation after it in brackets ( ), cover the definition quickly and try to say what it is. Then uncover it to see if you were right.
- Revise for short periods but do it often. Five minutes a day is probably better than half an hour a week; but half an hour a week is probably better than two hours a month.
- As with learning, be active when you revise. Look for different ways to revise: test yourself, create games for yourself; set goals/targets (= decide on things you want to be able to do by a particular time); decide when to work on something, e.g. meaning on Sunday, pronunciation on Monday, etc.
Exercises

1.1 Think about these questions. On the opposite page you will find some answers. Do you agree with them?

1 Is it better to plan regular self-study, or is it better just to study when you think you’ve got some free time?
2 Do you think you should work through the units in the same order as they appear in the book?
3 Do you think it’s a good idea to write down new words in a notebook while you are studying a unit?
4 Is it necessary to revise vocabulary?
5 Is it better to revise vocabulary occasionally for long periods of time, or is it better to revise regularly for short periods of time?

1.2 Finding your way round the book.

Turn to the Topic units in the Contents on pages 1–3. Take a blank piece of paper and cover the right-hand side of the page giving the examples. Now read down the list of unit titles. For each one, try to write down your own examples – one or two for each unit. Are there any unit titles you don’t understand? Are there any units where you can’t think of examples? If so, turn to that unit and find out what it is about.

You could use similar titles in your own vocabulary notebook. (See Unit 2)

1.3 True or False? If the sentence is false, rewrite it to make it true. Write your answers in pencil.

1 In this book, new words are often shown in bold print.
2 Definitions/explanations of new words are often in brackets after the word.
3 A routine means doing certain things in a different way each time.
4 If you maintain something at a level, it means you keep it at the same level.
5 If something, e.g. a way of learning, is effective, it doesn’t work very well.
6 At least 50 people means a maximum of 50 people.
7 If you write something then rub it out, you remove it from the page.
8 If you do something silently, you do it without making a noise.
9 Revision means studying something for the first time.
10 If you have a goal or target, you have something you want to be able to do or achieve by a particular point in the future.

Now check your answers on the opposite page and look at any wrong answers carefully. Then rub out your answers and come back to this exercise again tomorrow or within the next two or three days. Find out how much you can remember.

1.4 Planning your self-study.

Now start making your own plans to use this book. Decide how much time you can spend each week, plan some longer periods to study units for the first time, but also some shorter periods for revision. The first five units will teach you some important vocabulary; give you ideas on keeping a notebook; and give you help with pronunciation. After that, continue with the units that interest you most.

Good luck.
2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook

A Organising your notebook

Give each page or double page a title, e.g. sport, education, phrasal verbs, etc. Then, as you learn new words, record each one on a suitable page. You could also have a general index in the back of your book, with a space for each letter. Then, as you learn new words, you enter them alphabetically with the title of the topic in brackets.

B What do I need to record?

These things are important but you won’t need to record all of them for every word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What?</th>
<th>How?</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a translation</td>
<td>a translation</td>
<td>lembrar = to remember (Portuguese)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b definition/explanation</td>
<td>a pond is an area of water smaller than a lake.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c synonym or opposite</td>
<td>awful (= terrible); ugly (= beautiful)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d picture</td>
<td>saucepan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e example sentences</td>
<td>My hands were cold so I put on my gloves.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
<td>phonetic symbols</td>
<td>ache /eik/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or your own system</td>
<td>ache (like ‘make’)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part of speech</td>
<td>(n), (v), (adj), etc.</td>
<td>gloves (n); remember (v); careful (adj),</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar</td>
<td>make a note +</td>
<td>ache (n, v)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common partners</td>
<td>example sentence</td>
<td>enjoy + -ing form; I enjoy going to parties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special style</td>
<td>phrase or sentence</td>
<td>weather (U); We had lovely weather in Italy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>make a note</td>
<td>make a mistake; make a decision; make a mess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>purchase (fml); kids (inf/ml)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: You won’t learn everything about a word when you first record it, so always leave space in your notebook, then you can come back and add more information later.

C Organising words on the page

Certain words often appear together (common partners), so it is a good idea to record them together, and not just write lists of words on their own. You can do this in different ways:

1. Don’t pronounce the ‘w’ in wrist or the ‘b’ in thumb.

2. A decision: take a shower, take a photograph.

3. Smile: She smiled at me yesterday. He gave me a big smile. She’s got a lovely smile.

4. Rise slowly, rise sharply, fall slowly, fall sharply.

Note: Both verbs are irregular: rise/rose/risen; fall/fell/fallen.
Exercises

2.1 Organise this list of words into three groups and give each one a title.

- tie
- put on
- fare
- blouse
- homeless
- train
- get on
- painful
- scarf
- jumper
- jacket
- journey
- careful
- station
- helpful
- jeans
- platform
- thoughtless
- ticket
- useless

Find the units in this book which may include these words and add more examples.

2.2 Underline the correct answer or answers.

1 A pond is:
   a) bigger than a lake
   b) smaller than a lake
   c) the same size
2 I really enjoy:
   a) play tennis
   b) to play tennis
   c) playing tennis
3 When we were on holiday we had:
   a) lovely weathers
   b) lovely weather
   c) a lovely weather
4 The underlined letters in ache are pronounced the same as in:
   a) machine
   b) catch
   c) chemist
5 She gave me a .......... smile.
   a) strong
   b) big
   c) large
6 The past tense of fall is:
   a) fell
   b) felt
   c) falled
7 You can put on:
   a) gloves
   b) a decision
   c) shoes
8 Rise sharply means:

   a)
   b)
   c)

2.3 Look again at the list a–e in B. Which would be the best way(s) to record the meaning of each word in the list below? What other information would be useful to record with this word (e.g. pronunciation, part of speech, grammar, common partners, etc.)? Use a dictionary to help you.

- dream
- concentrate
- beard
- nearly
- empty
- forget
- rescue
- knife

2.4 Fill the gaps with common partners for these verbs, then start a page in your own notebook for more examples. Turn to Unit 19 to help you.

- take
  - a picture
- make
  - a mistake
- do
  - your homework
- have
  - a rest
3 Using a dictionary

A What dictionaries do I need?
If possible, you should buy two dictionaries: a good bilingual dictionary and a good English-English dictionary. The bilingual dictionary is quicker and easier for you to understand; the English-English dictionary may give you more information about a word or phrase, and it is also a good idea for you to work in English as much as possible. Here are some current recommended English-English dictionaries:

Large dictionaries
Cambridge International Dictionary of English
Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English
Collins COBUILD English Dictionary
Oxford Advanced Learner’s Dictionary

Medium-sized dictionaries
Collins COBUILD Essential Dictionary
Oxford Wordpower Dictionary
Longman Active Study Dictionary

B What information does a dictionary give me?
- the meaning, e.g. homesick = unhappy when you are away from home for a long time
- the pronunciation, e.g. chaos /k’sɛs/, dreadful /drɪdʒəl/, island /aɪlænd/
- the part of speech, e.g. dirty adj (= adjective), lose v (= verb), law n (= noun)
- any special grammatical features, e.g. advice (U) (= uncountable)
- common collocations (word partners), e.g. you do homework [NOT you make homework]
- example phrases or sentences, e.g. It was such a big menu, I didn’t know what to choose.
- opposites (where they exist), e.g. polite (= impolite/rude)

Note: In most English-English dictionaries for foreign learners, collocations are usually shown in bold or italics, or they are included in the examples given after the definition.

C How should I use my dictionary?
Here are some ideas to help you.
- When you look up a word, put a ✓ next to it. Each time you return to a page with a ✓ look at it quickly to check that you remember the word.
- If you see an English word in a text, first try to guess the meaning, and carry on reading to see if your guess seems correct. Use your dictionary to check the meaning.
- If you look up a word in a bilingual dictionary and get several different words in your own language, look up the word in your monolingual dictionary. This should help you to decide which word in your own language is the nearest translation in this context.
- Remember that many words have more than one meaning, and the first meaning in the dictionary is not always the one you want. Read through the different meanings.


**Exercises**

If you find these exercises difficult, it may mean that you need to practise using a dictionary more often, or you need to buy yourself a better dictionary.

3.1 Use a dictionary to find/check the answers to these questions. (They are all based on words from the opposite page.)

1. What does **dreadful** mean?
2. How do you pronounce **lose**? (Is it the same as 'choose' or 'chose'?)
3. What part of speech is **choose**?
4. What part of speech is **homesick**?
5. **Homework** and **chaos** are both nouns, but what type of noun are they?
6. What adjectives are often used before **chaos**? (Give two.)
7. What two prepositions are often used after **choose**?
8. Write down a sentence example of **choose** used with a preposition.

3.2 When you look up a word, you can also use your dictionary to increase your vocabulary by learning related words and phrases. Find out if your dictionary helps you to answer these questions, also about words from the opposite page.

1. **Choose** is a verb, but what is the noun with the same meaning?
2. **Advice** is a noun, but what is the verb with the same meaning?
3. **Advice** is also uncountable, but you can make it countable using another word. Can you complete this sentence: ‘He gave me a very useful ___________ of advice.’
4. What adjective is formed from **chaos**?
5. What is the opposite of **dirty**?
6. What is the difference between **homework** and **housework**?
7. What is the opposite of **lose a game**?
8. What is the opposite of **lose weight**?
9. **Law** often appears in the phrase ‘law and __________ _.’ What is the missing word?
10. If you want to sit at a table in a café and you see that one person is sitting there already, but another **seat** is empty, what can you say to the person sitting down?

3.3 In the word ‘island’ /aɪˈlænd/, the letter ‘s’ is silent (= not pronounced). Use the pronunciation guide in your dictionary to find the silent letters in each of these words. (Do not include the letter ‘e’ at the end of a word.)

- **knife**
- **bomb**
- **psychology**
- **receipt**
- **castle**
- **doubt**
- **wrist**
- **calm**

**Note:** Students often ask if the letter ‘t’ is pronounced in ‘often’. Some people pronounce it, others don’t. What does your dictionary say?

3.4 Look at the entry for **suit** on the right, then match the definitions with the sentences on the left.

1. ‘I’m afraid black doesn’t **suit** me – my hair is the wrong colour.’
2. A: I’m not going, so don’t ask me again.  
   B: OK. **Suit** yourself.
3. If we have the meeting this afternoon, would 2.30 **suit** you?

---

**Exercises**

If you find these exercises difficult, it may mean that you need to practise using a dictionary more often, or you need to buy yourself a better dictionary.

3.1 Use a dictionary to find/check the answers to these questions. (They are all based on words from the opposite page.)

1. What does **dreadful** mean?
2. How do you pronounce **lose**? (Is it the same as ‘choose’ or ‘chose’?)
3. What part of speech is **choose**?
4. What part of speech is **homesick**?
5. **Homework** and **chaos** are both nouns, but what type of noun are they?
6. What adjectives are often used before **chaos**? (Give two.)
7. What two prepositions are often used after **choose**?
8. Write down a sentence example of **choose** used with a preposition.

3.2 When you look up a word, you can also use your dictionary to increase your vocabulary by learning related words and phrases. Find out if your dictionary helps you to answer these questions, also about words from the opposite page.

1. **Choose** is a verb, but what is the noun with the same meaning?
2. **Advice** is a noun, but what is the verb with the same meaning?
3. **Advice** is also uncountable, but you can make it countable using another word. Can you complete this sentence: ‘He gave me a very useful ___________ of advice.’
4. What adjective is formed from **chaos**?
5. What is the opposite of **dirty**?
6. What is the difference between **homework** and **housework**?
7. What is the opposite of **lose a game**?
8. What is the opposite of **lose weight**?
9. **Law** often appears in the phrase ‘law and __________ _.’ What is the missing word?
10. If you want to sit at a table in a café and you see that one person is sitting there already, but another **seat** is empty, what can you say to the person sitting down?

3.3 In the word ‘island’ /aɪˈlænd/, the letter ‘s’ is silent (= not pronounced). Use the pronunciation guide in your dictionary to find the silent letters in each of these words. (Do not include the letter ‘e’ at the end of a word.)

- **knife**
- **bomb**
- **psychology**
- **receipt**
- **castle**
- **doubt**
- **wrist**
- **calm**

**Note:** Students often ask if the letter ‘t’ is pronounced in ‘often’. Some people pronounce it, others don’t. What does your dictionary say?

3.4 Look at the entry for **suit** on the right, then match the definitions with the sentences on the left.

1. ‘I’m afraid black doesn’t **suit** me – my hair is the wrong colour.’
2. A: I’m not going, so don’t ask me again.  
   B: OK. **Suit** yourself.
3. If we have the meeting this afternoon, would 2.30 **suit** you?

---

**Exercises**

If you find these exercises difficult, it may mean that you need to practise using a dictionary more often, or you need to buy yourself a better dictionary.

3.1 Use a dictionary to find/check the answers to these questions. (They are all based on words from the opposite page.)

1. What does **dreadful** mean?
2. How do you pronounce **lose**? (Is it the same as ‘choose’ or ‘chose’?)
3. What part of speech is **choose**?
4. What part of speech is **homesick**?
5. **Homework** and **chaos** are both nouns, but what type of noun are they?
6. What adjectives are often used before **chaos**? (Give two.)
7. What two prepositions are often used after **choose**?
8. Write down a sentence example of **choose** used with a preposition.

3.2 When you look up a word, you can also use your dictionary to increase your vocabulary by learning related words and phrases. Find out if your dictionary helps you to answer these questions, also about words from the opposite page.

1. **Choose** is a verb, but what is the noun with the same meaning?
2. **Advice** is a noun, but what is the verb with the same meaning?
3. **Advice** is also uncountable, but you can make it countable using another word. Can you complete this sentence: ‘He gave me a very useful ___________ of advice.’
4. What adjective is formed from **chaos**?
5. What is the opposite of **dirty**?
6. What is the difference between **homework** and **housework**?
7. What is the opposite of **lose a game**?
8. What is the opposite of **lose weight**?
9. **Law** often appears in the phrase ‘law and __________ _.’ What is the missing word?
10. If you want to sit at a table in a café and you see that one person is sitting there already, but another **seat** is empty, what can you say to the person sitting down?

3.3 In the word ‘island’ /aɪˈlænd/, the letter ‘s’ is silent (= not pronounced). Use the pronunciation guide in your dictionary to find the silent letters in each of these words. (Do not include the letter ‘e’ at the end of a word.)

- **knife**
- **bomb**
- **psychology**
- **receipt**
- **castle**
- **doubt**
- **wrist**
- **calm**

**Note:** Students often ask if the letter ‘t’ is pronounced in ‘often’. Some people pronounce it, others don’t. What does your dictionary say?

3.4 Look at the entry for **suit** on the right, then match the definitions with the sentences on the left.

1. ‘I’m afraid black doesn’t **suit** me – my hair is the wrong colour.’
2. A: I’m not going, so don’t ask me again.  
   B: OK. **Suit** yourself.
3. If we have the meeting this afternoon, would 2.30 **suit** you?
A  Parts of speech
nouns      e.g. chair, information, happiness
verbs      e.g. choose, tell, complain
adjectives e.g. happy, tall, dangerous
adverbs    e.g. slowly, carefully, often
prepositions e.g. in, at, on
pronouns   e.g. me, you, him, we, it, she
articles   e.g. definite article (the); indefinite article (a/an)

B  Special terms
Uncountable noun: (U) a noun which has no plural form and cannot be used with the
definite article, e.g. information. See Unit 27.
Plural noun: (pi) a noun which only has a plural form and cannot be used with the
definite article, e.g. trousers. See Unit 27.
Infinitive: the base form of a verb, e.g. (to) work, (to) stop, (to) be.
Phrasal verb: a verb + adverb and/or preposition, e.g. turn on (verb + adverb), look after
(verb + preposition), give up (verb + adverb), put up with (verb + adverb + preposition).
Idiom: a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words, e.g.
'never mind, hang on, a short cut, keep an eye on something.
Transitive verb: a verb which needs a direct object, e.g. Police caught the man ('the man' is
the direct object of the verb 'caught'). See Unit 17.
Intransitive verb: a verb which does not need a direct object, e.g. The books arrived on
time. (There is no direct object after arrive.) See Unit 17.

C  Word building
In the word uncomfortable, un- is a prefix, comfort is a root, and -able is a suffix. Other
common prefixes include: re-, in-, and dis-; common suffixes include: -ity, -ment, and -ive.
Many words also have synonyms, which are words with the same meaning. For example,
'big' is a synonym of 'large'. The opposite is 'small'.

D  Pronunciation
Dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word using phonetic symbols, e.g. book /buk/,
before /br'fɔː/; cinema /'sɪnəmə/, and so on.
Each word contains one or more syllables: 'book' has one syllable; 'before' has two syllables
(be-fore); 'cinema' has three syllables (ci-ne-ma); 'education' has four syllables (e-du-ca-
tion); and so on.
For pronunciation, it is important to know which syllable has the main stress. On 'before' it
is the second syllable (be-fore); on 'cinema' it is the first (cinema); and on 'education' it is the
third (education).
Note: Dictionaries mark stress in different ways: in bold (return); or a ' before the main
syllable (re'turn). Make sure you understand how your dictionary shows it.

E  Punctuation
full stop . comma , brackets () hyphen - question mark ?
Exercises

4.1 There is one word missing in each line of this text. Where does the missing word go? What could it be? And what type of word is it (noun, verb, etc.)? Look at the example first.

Last year I went to (for) my holiday. I spent the first week Seville staying with a couple of friends, and then I took a train to Barcelona where spent another ten days. It is beautiful city and I had a marvellous time. I stayed in a very hotel right in the centre, but I didn’t mind spending a lot money because it is a wonderful and also very convenient. My brother was the person who recommended it; he goes Spain a lot and he stays anywhere else.

4.2 In the dialogue below, can you find at least one example of the following: an uncountable noun; a plural noun; a phrasal verb; an idiom?

A: What’s the time?
B: 8 o’clock, so we’d better get a move on if we’re going to meet your sister at the airport.
A: That’s alright. Her flight doesn’t arrive until 8.30.
B: Yeah, but it’ll take us an hour to get there – you know what the traffic is like.
A: OK. I’ll just go and get changed.
B: What’s wrong with those shorts?
A: I don’t like driving in shorts. I’m going to put some jeans on.

4.3 Look at the underlined verbs in these sentences. Which are transitive, which are intransitive?

1 She broke her leg. 4 Take off your jacket.
2 I got up at seven thirty. 5 She doesn’t like Chinese food.
3 We arrived late. 6 He told me to sit down.

4.4 How many syllables are there in each of the words in the box?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>noun</th>
<th>informal education</th>
<th>understand</th>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>decide</th>
<th>pronunciation</th>
<th>before</th>
<th>opposite</th>
<th>preposition</th>
<th>comfortable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Now mark the main stress on each of the above words.

4.5 Look at these words, then answer the questions below.

happy correct lucky sure possible

1 What part of speech are these words?
2 Change each one into an adverb.
3 Can you write down a synonym for at least three of the words?
4 Which prefix do you need to form the opposite of each word? (three different ones)
5 Which word has the main stress on the second syllable?
Problems with pronunciation

Phonetics

With many languages you can look at a word and know (more or less) how to pronounce it. With English this is not true: it is often very difficult to know the pronunciation from looking at a word. For example:
cough (pronounced like ‘off’) enough (like ‘stuff’) through (like ‘too’) and dough (like ‘so’) The only way you can be sure about the pronunciation is to learn some phonetic symbols which tell you the pronunciation. Dictionaries use them, and there is a table of phonetic symbols, with examples, on page 246. Phonetic symbols are used next to many words in the index, and there is a special list of words on page 247, which cause pronunciation problems for speakers from different countries.

Word stress

When a word has two or more syllables, one of them has the main stress. In these examples, the main stress follows the symbol ‘:

'accent pre'fer edu'cation 'necessary Ja'pan Japa'nese

If you put the stress on the wrong syllable, it may be difficult for listeners to understand what you are saying.

/al/

Probably the most important sound in English because it is often the pronunciation of the letters ‘a’, ‘o’ and ‘e’ if they are not part of a stressed syllable.

ma'chine /ma'ʃi:n/ 'mother /'mAda/ po'tato /po'teitəʊ/ 'cinema /'sinəma/

Key letters and sounds

A common problem is that a single letter or combination of letters has more than one pronunciation, e.g. -ough in section A. Here are some more examples:

the letter ‘o’ is often /əʊ/, e.g. hot; or /ə/, e.g. some; or /əu/, e.g. no
the letter ‘a’ is often /æ/, e.g. hat; or /ei/, e.g. same; or /ai/, e.g. fast
the letter ‘u’ is often /ʌ/, e.g. run; or /u/, e.g. put
the letter ‘i’ is often /ɪ/, e.g. sit; or /ai/, e.g. side

Silent letters and short syllables

There are many words in English where a letter is not pronounced:

fasten plum'ber calm knee wrong comb

There are also many words where we almost ‘eat’ one of the syllables, and as a result a vowel sound almost disappears and a word, for example, with three written syllables may be two (or two and a half) in spoken English. For example:

interested /ɪntrəstɪd/ fattening /'fætənɪŋ/ vegetable /'vedʒtəbl/

Note: The exercises on the next page practise some words with difficult pronunciation.
Exercises

5.1 Try using some phonetic symbols. Using your dictionary or the index, fill in the pronunciation of these words (put the symbols between the //). Then practise saying the words and make sure you can see and hear the difference in the pronunciation of the words in each pair.

1 row // cow //
2 back // bacon //
3 soup // soap //
4 vase // razor //

5.2 Look at the underlined letters in these words. Which one is the odd one out in each case?
1 bread dream spread dead
2 spoon room flood choose
3 fast phrase blame sunbathe
4 cousin wound (n) rough trouble
5 virus pilot diet since
6 hyphen symptom type psychology

5.3 Which syllable has the main stress in these words? Put them in the correct column.

cathedral policy palace
opposite police understand
advertisement desert (n)
competition organise
assistance education

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>first</th>
<th>second</th>
<th>third</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now look at the words again. How many examples of the /a/ sound can you find?

5.4 Look at the underlined letters in these pairs of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different?

know / knife
island / Islam
listen / western
aisle / Christmas
hand / handsome

muscle / scissors
climb / bomb
honest / hope
wrong / wrist
calf / calm
A  Equipment

These are some of the things you may use in your classroom or school.

- video (cassette)
- briefcase
- pencil sharpener
- bag
- socket
- rubber
- OHP (overhead projector)
- file
- chalk
- hole punch
- cassette
- tape/cassette recorder + lead
- board pen
- OHT (overhead transparency)
- highlighter pen
- photocopier
- plug

Note: We can use some of these nouns as verbs with little or no change: to video (= to record a programme on video), to photocopy (= to use the photocopier), to highlight and to file (= to put things in a file)

B  Classroom activities

Here are some classroom activities. Look carefully at the verbs in bold.

Things you do in the classroom:

- Look up a word if you don't understand it. (= find the meaning of a word in a dictionary)
- Borrow someone's dictionary or rubber. (= use it and then return it)
- Rub out mistakes in your notebook. (= erase mistakes / remove them using a rubber)

Things the teacher may do in the classroom:

- Plug in the tape recorder. (= put the plug in the socket and turn on the electricity)
- Turn up the tape recorder (= increase the volume) if the students can't hear it.
- Rub things off the board. (= remove writing from the board)
- Correct students' English. (= give the correct English if students make mistakes)

Things your teacher may ask you to do in the classroom:

- Could you clean the board, Carlos? (= remove all the writing from the board)
- Write these words down. (= write these words on a piece of paper / in a notebook)
- Enrique, could you swap places (= exchange places) with Lorena?
- Repeat this sentence (= say it again) after me.

C  Questions about vocabulary

What does X mean? [NOT what means X?]
How do you pronounce it?
How do you spell 'bicycle'?
How do you use 'anyway' in a sentence?
What's the difference between X and Y?
Exercises

6.1 Label these pictures then check your answers on the opposite page.

6.2 Answer these questions.
1. What do you rub off the board?
2. What do you put in a tape recorder?
3. What do you put on an OHP?
4. What do you keep in a file?
5. What do you put in a briefcase?
6. What do you put in a socket?
7. What do you use a dictionary for?
8. What do you use a rubber for?
9. What do you use a photocopier for?
10. Why do you turn up a tape recorder?

6.3 Match the verbs on the left with the nouns on the right.
1. clean
2. turn up
3. borrow
4. swap
5. video
6. do
7. correct
8. look up
9. plug in
places
a word
mistakes
the board
a dictionary
the OHP
the tape recorder
a programme
an exercise

6.4 Think about your last lesson (in English or any other subject). Did you do any of these things?
clean the board swap places with someone
use a rubber look up a word
borrow something make a mistake
watch a video write something down in a notebook

6.5 Here are some answers. What are the possible questions?
A: ..........................................? B: It means to exchange places.
A: ..........................................? B: /swɔp/ Like 'cop' or 'stop'.
A: ..........................................? B: S-W-A-P.
A: ..........................................? B: I can't see the board from here. Will you swap places with me?
With the meaning ‘not’

Prefixes (un-, in-, il-, ir-, and dis-) are often used to give adjectives (and some verbs and nouns) a negative meaning. Here are some common examples:

happy unhappy like (v) dislike (v)
possible impossible legal illegal (= against the law)
correct incorrect regular irregular, e.g. irregular verbs

un- is used with many different words, e.g. unfriendly, unable, unemployed (= without a job), untidy (= not in order; in a mess)
im- is used before some words beginning with m or p, e.g. impolite (= rude), impatient (somebody who is impatient wants things to happen now; they cannot wait for things)
il- is used before some words beginning with l, e.g. illegible (= cannot be read because the writing is very bad)
ir- is only used before some words beginning with r, e.g. irresponsible
dis- is used before some adjectives, e.g. dishonest, and a few verbs, e.g. dislike, disagree
in- is used before a limited number of words, e.g. invisible (= cannot be seen)

Note: A prefix does not normally change word stress, e.g. happy/unhappy; possible/impossible. But the stress may change if you want to emphasise the negative or opposite:

A: Was he happy about the change?
B: No, he was very unhappy about it.

Verb prefixes: un- and dis-

These prefixes have two meanings: they can have a negative meaning (as above), but they can also mean ‘the opposite of an action’ or ‘to reverse an action’. This meaning is used with certain verbs.

I locked the door when I left, but I lost the key, so I couldn’t unlock it when I got back.
I had to pack my suitcase (= put everything in it) very quickly, so when I unpacked (= took everything out) at the hotel, most of my clothes looked terrible.
The plane appeared in the sky, then suddenly disappeared behind a cloud.
In the morning you get dressed (= put on your clothes); when you go to bed you get undressed (= take off your clothes).

Other verb prefixes with specific meanings

re- (= again) My homework was terrible, so I had to redo it.
The shop closed down but will reopen next month.
I failed my exam but I can retake (or redo/resit) it next year.
over- (= too much) I think my boss is overdoing it at the moment. (= working too hard; also overwork)
I went to bed very late and I overslept (= slept too long) this morning.
The shop assistant overcharged me. (= asked me for too much money)
mis- (= badly or incorrectly) I’m afraid I misunderstood what he said.
Two of the students misread the first question.
Exercises

7.1 Which prefix forms the opposite of these words? (The bottom line are all verbs, the rest are adjectives.)

...happy ...patient ...polite ...legal
...correct ...regular ...visible ...possible
...legible ...friendly ...employed ...honest
...pack ...lock ...agree ...like

7.2 Agree with these statements, using words from the left-hand page which have the same meaning as the underlined words.

Example: A: He doesn’t have a job, does he?
B: No, he’s unemployed.

1 It’s against the law, isn’t it?
   Oh yes, ........................................

2 His room is always in a mess, isn’t it?
   Yes, ...............................................

3 He took off his clothes!
   Yes, ...............................................

4 This handwriting is impossible to read.
   Yes I know, ......................................

5 She can never wait for five minutes, can she?
   No, .............................................

6 I thought it was rude, didn’t you?
   Yes, it was very ................................

7.3 Complete the verbs in these sentences.

1 I’m sorry, I missed her message completely.
2 We unpacked as soon as we got to the hotel, then went out for a walk.
3 She was here a minute ago, but then she disappeared. I’m afraid I don’t know where she is now.
4 We normally have similar opinions but I disagreed with him totally on the subject of drugs.
5 My homework was so bad that I’ll have to rewrite it.
6 Apparently her alarm clock didn’t ring and she overslept.
7 She finally managed to unlock the door and we were able to go inside.
8 I didn’t like the film, but the others enjoyed it.
9 I don’t think I’ll pass the exam, but I can always rewrite it in September.
10 The post office shuts for lunch but it should reopen at 2.00 p.m.
11 She’s over at the moment. She really needs a holiday and a complete break from her job.
12 My sister wrapped up my present so well that it took me about five minutes to unwrap it.

7.4 Keep several pages in your notebook for verbs or adjectives which combine with these prefixes. Each time you add a new word, read through your list of words with that prefix, then close your book and see how many you can remember.
8 Noun suffixes

A Verb + suffix

Many nouns are formed in this way.

Verb                     Suffix   Noun
improve (= get better)   -ment    improvement
manage (e.g. a shop or business) -ment    management
elect (= choose somebody by voting) -ion    election
discuss (= talk about something seriously) -ion    discussion
inform (= tell someone something) -ation  information
organise                -ation  organisation
jog (= running to keep fit or for pleasure) -ing    jogging
spell (e.g. S-P-E-L-L)   -ing    spelling

Note: Sometimes there is a spelling change. The most common is the omission of the final ‘e’ before the suffix -ion or -ation: translate/translation; organise/organisation

B Adjective + suffix

Nouns are also formed by adding a suffix to an adjective. Two suffixes often added to adjectives to form nouns are -ness and -ity.

Adjective                     Suffix   Noun
weak (≠ strong)               -ness    weakness
happy                        -ness    happiness
dark (e.g. at night, when you can’t see) -ness    darkness
stupid (≠ intelligent, clever) -ity    stupidity
punctual (= always arrives at the right time) -ity    punctuality
similar (= almost the same; ≠ different) -ity    similarity

C Pronunciation

The addition of these suffixes may change the pronunciation.

Nouns ending -ion or -ity have the main stress on the syllable before, so the pronunciation may be different from the verb or adjective:

Verb           Noun           Adjective       Noun
educate        education      similar         similarity
translate      translation     stupid          stupidity
discuss        discussion     punctual       punctuality

D -er/or and -ist

These are common noun suffixes added to existing nouns or verbs, and they describe people and their jobs.

-er         -er      -or      -ist
dancer      driver    actor    artist
singer      manager   director  economist
murderer    footballer translator psychologist
farmer      employer   operator  journalist

Note: Notice the common spelling changes: translate/translator, operate/operator, economy/economist, psychology/psychologist.
Exercises

8.1 Complete the tables and mark the stress on each word. The last two in each column are not on the opposite page, but do you know or can you guess the noun formed from them?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>educate</td>
<td></td>
<td>stupid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>improve</td>
<td></td>
<td>dark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jog</td>
<td></td>
<td>weak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>govern</td>
<td></td>
<td>similar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td></td>
<td>punctual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hesitate</td>
<td></td>
<td>sad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrange</td>
<td></td>
<td>popular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.2 Combine the suffixes on the right with the verbs or adjectives on the left, and then complete the text below. (Remember you may need to make a small spelling change.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>improve</td>
<td>-ment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>televise</td>
<td>-ity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elect</td>
<td>-ion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>educate</td>
<td>-ation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>govern</td>
<td>-ness</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak</td>
<td></td>
<td>sad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage</td>
<td></td>
<td>popular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In his first broadcast on (1) ____________, since he won the (2) ____________ last month, the Prime Minister promised to make health and (3) ____________ two of his top priorities. And in a strong attack on the previous (4) ____________, he said that the present (5) ____________ of the British economy was caused entirely by their (6) ____________ and bad (7) _____________. He said he would act immediately and he hoped the British people would be able to see clear signs of an (8) ____________ in the economy by the end of the year.

8.3 Write down the name of the person who does these things.

Example: farm farmer
1 act ................. 4 sing ................. 7 economics .................
2 employ ............. 5 murder ............... 8 translate ..............
3 football ............ 6 psychology ........... 9 manage .............

8.4 Look at the two examples and then complete the rest of the definitions.

Example: An actor is a person who ... acts in films, plays, and on TV...
A murderer is a person who ... murders someone...

1 A journalist is a person who
2 A ballet dancer is a person who
3 A film director is a person who
4 A bank manager is a person who
5 An employer is a person who
6 A pop singer is a person who
7 A translator is a person who
8 A lorry driver is a person who
9 A photographer is a person who
10 An artist is a person who
9 Adjective suffixes

Suffixes change word class, e.g. from verb to noun or noun to adjective, but they can also change meaning (see sections B and C below).

### A Noun or verb + suffix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun or Verb</th>
<th>Suffix</th>
<th>Adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>danger, fame</td>
<td>-ous</td>
<td>dangerous, famous (= well-known)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>music, politics</td>
<td>-al</td>
<td>musical, political, industrial, economical (= saves you money)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>industry, economics</td>
<td>-al</td>
<td>economical (= saves you money)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloud, fog, sun, dirt</td>
<td>-y</td>
<td>cloudy, foggy, sunny, dirty (= clean)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attract, create</td>
<td>-ive</td>
<td>attractive (= pretty, nice to look at); creative (= able to produce new ideas; with imagination)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: Sometimes there is a spelling change. Here are common examples:
double the consonant, e.g. sun/sunny, fog/foggy
leave out the final 'e', e.g. create/creative, fame/famous
leave out the final 's' before 'al', e.g. politics/political; economics/economical
change 'y' to 'i' before 'al', e.g. industry/industrial*

### B -able /əbl/

This suffix (also -ible in some words) is used to form many adjectives from nouns or verbs:
enjoyable, comfortable, knowledgeable (= knows a lot), suitable (= right/correct for a particular situation).

Quite often, -able (and -ible) has the meaning 'can be done'. For example, something that is washable 'can be washed'. Other examples include:

drinkable, comprehensible (= can be comprehended or understood), reliable (= can be relied on or trusted, e.g. a car or other machine that never goes wrong or breaks down).

Words ending -able quite often express the opposite meaning by adding the prefix un-:

undrinkable, unreliable, unbreakable (= cannot be broken), unsuitable, uncomfortable

Words ending -ible add the prefix in-:

incomprehensible, inflexible (somebody who is inflexible has a fixed idea about something and cannot change quickly or easily; an inflexible timetable cannot be changed easily); inedible (= cannot be eaten).

### C -ful and -less

The suffix -ful often means 'full of' + the meaning of the adjective: careful, you are full of care; if you are helpful you are full of help. Other examples are: painful (= hurts a lot), useful, and thoughtful (= someone who is thoughtful is kind and always thinks about others; a thoughtful action shows care for others)

The suffix -less means 'without' + the meaning of the adjective: if you are careless, you do something 'without care'. Other examples are: painless, useless (= has no use or function) thoughtless, jobless and homeless (= with nowhere to live)

*Note: You can see that -ful and -less are often used with the same words to form opposites. This is not always true: a person with a home is NOT homefull.*
Exercises

9.1 Write down an adjective (or adjectives) formed from these nouns or verbs. Cover the opposite page first.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>thought</th>
<th>dirt</th>
<th>pain</th>
<th>comfort</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>attract</td>
<td>care</td>
<td>knowledge</td>
<td>fame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>create</td>
<td>danger</td>
<td>suit</td>
<td>rely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fog</td>
<td>politics</td>
<td>sun</td>
<td>wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>home</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>music</td>
<td>break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.2 Fill the gaps with suitable adjectives from the opposite page.

1. You must be very ................. when you drive in wet weather.
2. It was so ................. this morning that I couldn’t see more than twenty metres in front of me.
3. Everyone in my country has heard of her; she’s very .................
4. The people in the tourist information office were very ................. and answered all our questions without any problems.
5. This is a very ................. road; there were at least three serious accidents on it last year.
6. It was very ................. when I hit my leg against the corner of the table.
7. This bag is very ................. because I can use it for work or when I go on holiday.
8. We’ve never had any problems with our TV in ten years; it’s been very .................
9. The factory is in the middle of the ................. part of the city, surrounded by other factories.
10. I made some coffee but it was horrible. In fact, my sister said it was .................
11. I’m afraid my working hours are very .................; I have to start at exactly the same time every day and finish at the same time every day.
12. It seems terrible to me that there are so many ................. people living in a city with thousands of empty houses.

9.3 How many of these words can form opposites with the suffix -less?

- painful
- wonderful
- useful
- careful
- beautiful
- tactful
- awful
- thoughtful

Can you think of words which mean the opposite of the other words (the ones without -less)?

9.4 From the adjectives on this page and the opposite page, choose three which could describe each of these people or things. (You can use the same adjective more than once.)

1. the weather ........................................
2. someone who is a very bad driver ........................................
3. Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart ........................................
4. a large city ........................................
5. Albert Einstein ........................................
6. a new car ........................................
7. a speech ........................................
8. yourself ........................................
A What is zero affixation?

Many words in English can function as a noun and verb, or noun and adjective, or verb and adjective, with no change in form. The meaning is not always the same, but this unit looks at examples where the words do have the same meaning.

What’s the answer? (noun) I must clean my room. (verb)
Answer the question. (verb) It’s a clean room. (adjective)
I don’t like the cold. (noun) I didn’t reply to the letter. (verb)
I don’t like cold weather. (adjective) I wrote a reply to the letter. (noun)

Note: Other examples in the book are marked like this: ache (n, v), damage (n, v), dry (v, adj). Keep a record of them in your notebook.

B Noun and verb

You may know these words in one form but not the other. (The definitions are for the verb.)

brake (= stop a car using the brake on the floor) ring (= phone)
diet (= eat less and lose weight) push (= pull)
guess (= give an answer without knowing the facts) murder (= kill someone)

Note: Other words in this group include: stay, drink, rest, look, cost, and wait. Use a dictionary if you need to check the meaning. Here are a few examples:

We queued for half an hour. We waited in a queue for half an hour.
This orange smells/tastes strange. This orange has got a strange smell/taste.
I didn’t know the answer, so I guessed. I didn’t know the answer, so I had a guess.

C Which verb?

When you use these words as nouns, you need to choose the correct verb to use with it.

Verb
We stayed in Paris for a short time.
We rested for a while.
She braked quickly.
He needs to diet.
I’m going to ring him.
I looked in the paper.
He pushed me.
I dreamt about you last night.

Noun
We had a short stay in Paris.
We had a short rest.
She put on the brakes quickly.
He needs to go on a diet.
I’m going to give him a ring.
I had a look in the paper.
He gave me a push.
I had a dream about you last night.
Exercises

10.1 Rewrite these sentences using the underlined nouns as verbs. The meaning must stay the same. Look at the example first.

Example: There was a lot of rain yesterday.

1 We had a long wait.
2 I had a dream about you last night.
3 We waited in the queue for half an hour.
4 The cost of the holiday was about £500.
5 I wrote a reply to his letter yesterday.

10.2 Now rewrite these sentences using the underlined verbs as nouns. The meaning must stay the same.

1 I’ll ring him this evening.
2 I diet if I put on weight.
3 It was very hot, so we rested for a while after lunch.
4 I braked but I still couldn’t stop in time.
5 He pushed me.
6 Did you look in the paper?

10.3 Sometimes the same word form can be a verb and noun but with a very different meaning. Read these pairs of sentences. Does the verb have the same meaning as the noun, a similar meaning, or a completely different meaning?

1 We had a long wait for the bus.
   If we wait any longer, we may miss the train.
2 Could we have another bottle of water, please?
   I asked her to water the garden.
3 I gave him the book.
   Did you book the table in the restaurant?
4 They always take a break after an hour’s work.
   Did he break his arm skiing?
5 I go for a run most mornings.
   I was late so I had to run to get to school on time.
Compound nouns

Formation
A compound noun is formed from two nouns, or an adjective and a noun. Here are some common examples.

- alarm clock
- credit card
- table tennis
- T-shirt
- earring
- sunglasses
- traffic lights
- tin opener
- parking meter
- *first aid
- *pedestrian crossing
- dining room (= the room where you eat meals)
- film star (e.g. Tom Cruise, Jodie Foster)
- brother-in-law (= your sister’s husband, your husband’s brother)
- income tax (= the tax you pay on your salary)
- writing paper (= paper for writing letters)
- washing machine (= the machine for washing clothes)
- cheque book (= a book which has cheques)
- baby-sitter (= he/she looks after children when parents are out)
- *mother tongue (= your first language)
- *science fiction (= stories about the future)
- *box office (= where you buy tickets in cinemas and theatres)

One word or two?
Compound nouns are usually written as two words (e.g. credit card), but sometimes they are joined by a hyphen (e.g. baby-sitter), or written as one word (e.g. sunglasses). Unfortunately there is no rule for this, so you may need to check in a dictionary.

Pronunciation
The main stress is usually on the first part (e.g. parking meter) but sometimes it is on both parts (e.g. mother tongue). In A, the compounds marked *all have the stress on both parts. Some dictionaries show the stress on compounds.

Forming new compounds
Quite often, one part of a compound forms the basis for a number of compound nouns.
- post/ticket/box office
- traffic lights/warden/jam
- film/pop/rock star
- brother/sister/father/mother-in-law
- dining/sitting/waiting room

Note: A traffic jam is a long line of cars which are moving slowly because the road is busy; and traffic wardens patrol the streets to make sure you are not parked in the wrong place illegally. You buy theatre tickets at the box office and train tickets at the ticket office.
Exercises

11.1 Find compound nouns on the opposite page connected with each of these topics.

- **MONEY**
- **ROADS**
- **THINGS WE WEAR**
- **PEOPLE**

11.2 Complete these sentences with suitable compound nouns, then see if you can find them on the opposite page.

1. I'm late because there was a terrible ................. in the centre of town.
2. Humphrey Bogart was a famous ................. in the forties and fifties.
3. My ................. didn't ring this morning and I didn't wake up until 9.30.
4. When I got to the surgery, I had to sit in the ................. for forty minutes before I could see the dentist.
5. Mary really wanted to see the film but she couldn't find a ................. for the children, so she had to stay at home.
6. When I'm driving I always wear ................. if it's very bright and sunny.
7. You have to pay ................. on your salary in Britain; the amount depends on how much you earn.
8. I often have the same problem: I park the car next to a ................., and then I discover that I don't have the right money.
9. In some countries you have to have a ................. box in your car for minor injuries and illnesses.
10. My brother loves ................., but I prefer true stories about the present or the past.

11.3 Take one word (the first part or the second part) from each compound and create a new compound. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

*Examples:* brother-in-law, mother-in-law

- **dining room**
- **table tennis**
- **traffic lights**
- **sunglasses**
- **post office**
- **hairdryer**

Now mark the main stress on each of the compound nouns you have created.

11.4 Try creating your own compound nouns. Choose two or three common words and then try to form compound nouns from them. When you have two or three possibilities, check in a dictionary to see if your words exist. Start with these.

- **book** or **book**
- **card**
Compound adjectives

Formation and pronunciation

A compound adjective is formed from two different words, and occasionally three. They are usually written with a hyphen (e.g. good-looking, well-known), and the stress is usually the same on both parts of the compound.

Describing people

Many compound adjectives describe a person's appearance, character, and situation.

This is William. He isn’t well-known (= famous), he isn’t well-off (= rich), and I’ve never heard anyone say he was good-looking (= handsome/attractive). But he’s a very nice man – kind, friendly and very easy-going (= relaxed). In this picture he’s wearing a short-sleeved shirt and a brand-new (= completely new) hat.

‘Well’ and ‘badly’

These adverbs combine with many past participles to form compound adjectives. You can use ‘well’ or ‘badly’ in front of the adjective (except well-known, which has no opposite).

A well-directed film
a badly-paid job (= a low salary)
a well-made pair of shoes
a badly-behaved child (= acting in a bad way)
a well-written story
a badly-dressed young man (= wearing horrible clothes)

A ‘five-minute’ walk

It is common to combine a number and a singular noun to form a compound adjective.

It’s a fifteen-minute drive to the centre. (= a drive of fifteen minutes)
He works in a four-star hotel. (= a hotel with a rating of four stars)
I gave her a five-pound note. (= a note with a value of five pounds)
The winner was a ten-year-old girl. (= a girl who is ten years old)
There was a two-hour delay on our flight. (= the plane was two hours’ late)

Common compounds

She had a full-time job in a bank, but after the baby was born she changed to a part-time job and just worked in the mornings.
The hotel is north-west of here, about ten miles away. (also north-east, south-east, and south-west)
Most of the population are right-handed, but about 10% are left-handed.
On trains and planes you can buy a first-class ticket if you are happy to pay a lot more.
Mary bought a second-hand BMW. (= the car was not brand-new, but was a new car for her)

Note: As with compound nouns, you can often combine different words with one part and form many different compound adjectives.
Exercises

12.1 Match words from the box on the left with words from the box on the right to form 12 compound adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>good</th>
<th>well</th>
<th>new</th>
<th>known</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy</td>
<td>north</td>
<td>written</td>
<td>class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>looking</td>
<td>sleeved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brand</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td>hand</td>
<td>handed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first</td>
<td>second</td>
<td>time</td>
<td>pound</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.2 For each word below, find two words which will combine with it to form different compound adjectives. Cover the left-hand page first.

well          badly          time
-------------  ---------------  -----
-------------  -------------  -----
-------------  -------------  -----
-------------  -------------  -----
-------------  -------------  -----

12.3 Complete the compound adjectives in these sentences.

1. They were both wearing short-............ shirts.
2. We stayed in a five-............. hotel.
3. There is a shop in London which sells things for left-............. people.
4. He's just bought a brand-............ car.
5. The airport is about ten miles south-............. of the city centre.
6. One little girl was very badly-.............; she kept shouting during lunch and then threw food all over the floor.
7. She's just got a .............-time job; she works three hours a day on Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays.
8. It was a very badly-............. article: I noticed several punctuation mistakes and lots of spelling mistakes.
9. They're very well-............., so they can afford to go to expensive restaurants.
10. It's a twenty-............. walk to the house, but it takes much less than that in the car.
11. She's got a little stall in the market where she sells second-............. things.
12. When I saw her last night, she was dancing with a very good-............. young man in a white suit.
13. I was astonished when the man at the next table gave the waiter a ten-............. note as a tip.
14. Have you ever met a well-............. actor or politician?
15. I had a nice time with my cousin – he's good company and very easy-.............

12.4 Write ten sentences about yourself and use a different compound adjective from the opposite page in each one. You can describe yourself, your personality, your family, your clothes, the place where you live, the journeys you make, etc. Try to do this exercise with a friend and see who can finish first.
13 Collocation (word partners)

A What is collocation?
If you want to use a word naturally, you need to learn the other words that often go with it (word partners). These can be very different from language to language. For example, in English we say:
I missed the bus (= I didn’t catch the bus) [NOT I lost the bus]
She made a mistake [NOT she did a mistake]
A heavy smoker (= someone who smokes a lot) [NOT a strong smoker or a big smoker]
It was a serious illness [NOT a big illness or a strong illness]

B Verb + noun
The meaning of many of these examples may be clear, but did you know these verbs and nouns go together? Is it the same or different in your language?
start the car (= turn on the engine)  start a family (= think about having your first child)
tell a story  tell the truth (= tell a lie)
tell a joke  run a shop/company (= manage/control it)
get on a bus (= get off)  get in(to) a car (= get out of a car)
miss a person (= be unhappy because that person is not there)  miss a lesson (= when you don’t come to a lesson)

C Adjective + noun
Common adjectives often combine with a wide range of nouns.
a soft drink (= non-alcoholic drink)  a soft voice (= a loud voice)
dry wine (= sweet wine)  dry weather (= wet weather)
strong coffee (= weak coffee)  a strong accent (= a slight accent)
hard work (= hard physically or mentally)  a great success (= very successful)
heavy traffic (= a lot of cars)  heavy rain (= raining a lot)

Look at some of these phrases in example sentences.
I can’t understand his English because he has such a strong accent.
It was hard work organising the conference, but I think it was a great success.
You always get heavy traffic during the rush hour.

D Adverb + adjective
In these examples, all the adverbs mean very, but we choose to use them with certain adjectives. (You could still use very in all of these examples if you wish.)
I was terribly sorry to hear about your accident.
He’s highly unlikely to come now. (= I’m almost sure he will not come)
She is fully aware of the problem. (= she knows all about the problem)
It is vitally important that you make a note of common collocations in your notebook.

E Collocation in dictionaries
All good dictionaries now include examples of common collocations but they do it in different ways: sometimes they are in bold print after the definition; sometimes in italics after the definition; and sometimes in the definition and examples. (See Unit 3, Section B.)
Exercises

13.1 You can keep a record of common collocations by using ‘spidergrams’. These are very clear on the page and you can add to them. Complete these.

13.2 Write the opposite of these phrases and expressions.
1. sweet wine
2. a strong accent
3. strong coffee
4. a soft voice
5. get on the bus
6. tell the truth
7. catch the bus
8. get in the car

13.3 Find a suitable adjective, verb or adverb from the opposite page to complete these sentences.
1. I’m .............. sorry I’m late, but I .............. the bus and had to wait ages for another one.
2. He .............. everyone the same joke, and nobody laughed.
3. We had lots of snow in the night and I had a problem .............. the car this morning.
4. Michael is the owner, but his brother John .............. the company, and he has about 50 employees working for him.
5. I think they want to get married and .............. a family.
6. That’s the third mistake she’s .............. today.
7. It’s .............. important that we finish this work by the end of the week.
8. If this .............. rain continues, I think he’s .............. unlikely to come.
9. I don’t drink .............. coffee at night because it keeps me awake.
10. I really .............. my family when I stayed in Australia on my own last year.

13.4 The adjectives on the left can all mean ‘very big’, but we often use them specifically with the nouns on the right. Use a good dictionary to find the correct collocations, and then complete the sentences below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wide</th>
<th>large</th>
<th>shoulders</th>
<th>range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>broad</td>
<td>vast</td>
<td>majority</td>
<td>size</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I used to be medium but I need a .............. now because I’ve put on weight.
2. Fortunately the shop I go to has a .............. of shirts and jumpers to choose from.
3. I’ve also got very .............., but my waist is quite small.
4. A few men can’t find clothes to fit them, but the .............. are small, medium or large.
Verb or adjective + preposition

A Verb (+ preposition)

Here are some common examples of verbs which are usually followed by a particular preposition. You will probably know most of these verbs, but do you always get the preposition right? Pay special attention to any that are different in your language.

I often listen to the radio.
My brother never agrees with me. (= he never has the same views/opinion as me)
I may go to the match; it really depends on the weather. (= the weather will decide for me)
He suffers from (= has the unpleasant/bad experience of) a type of diabetes.
He got married to a girl he met in France.
I'm going to apologise (= say sorry) for the mistakes we made.
She has applied (= made a written request) for a new job.
They were waiting for me when I arrived.
Don't worry (= be nervous) about your exam; it'll be OK.
She complained (= said she was not satisfied) to the waiter about the food. (You complain to someone about something.)
He spends a lot of money on clothes and discos.
That dictionary belongs to Rolf. (= it is Rolf's dictionary)

B Changes of meaning

Sometimes a verb may be followed by different prepositions, and the meaning changes.

He threw the ball to me.
(= for me to catch it)

He threw the ball at me.
(= in order to hit me; perhaps he was angry)

He shouted to me. (= in order to communicate with me)
He shouted at me. (= he was angry with me)

C Adjective (+ preposition)

I was never very good at mathematics.
She is afraid of (= frightened of) flying.
I'm very keen on Italian food. (= I like Italian food very much)
She is similar to (= almost the same as) her older sister, but very different from her brother.
He's very interested in antique furniture.
I was surprised at (or by) the weather; it rained nearly every day.
I think she is aware of (= knows about) the problems in her class.
I'm tired of studying foreign languages. (= I've had enough and I want to stop)
The streets are full of rubbish. (= there is rubbish everywhere in the streets)
There is something wrong with this TV. (= the TV is not working/functioning correctly)
Exercises

14.1 Finish these questions with the correct preposition, then write a short answer for each one.
1. A: What exactly is she worried ……….? B: ……………………………………….
2. A: What subjects is she good ……….? B: ……………………………………….
3. A: Who is she waiting ……….? B: ……………………………………….
4. A: What job is she applying ……….? B: ……………………………………….
5. A: What programme is she listening ……….? B: ……………………………………….
6. A: What did she complain ……….? B: ……………………………………….
7. A: What did she apologise ……….? B: ……………………………………….
8. A: Who does this car belong ……….? B: ……………………………………….
9. A: I know she was angry but who was she shouting ……….? B: ……………………………………….
10. A: What kind of films is she interested ……….? B: ……………………………………….
11. A: What will the decision depend ……….? B: ……………………………………….
12. A: What is she afraid ……….? B: ……………………………………….

14.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.
1. He suffers a at me, but it missed.
2. She wasn’t aware b for a job in Australia.
3. He threw the book c from a rare illness.
4. She complained d to the man across the lake.
5. She said it was similar e for the mistake.
6. She applied f at his choice.
7. She shouted g of clothes.
8. He said it depends h to the one she has.
9. The suitcase was full i of working at weekends.
10. She’s tired j of her mistakes.
11. She apologised k on me.
12. I was very surprised l about the bad service.

14.3 Complete these sentences in a way that is logical and grammatically correct. If possible, compare your answers with someone who has also done this exercise.
1. My steak was overcooked, so I complained ……………………………………….
2. When I was a child I sometimes wore clothes that belonged ……………………………………….
3. I want to help poor people, so I have decided to apply ………………………………………………….
4. I work quite hard but I’m not very good ………………………………………………….
5. In the summer a lot of people suffer ………………………………………………….
6. I’ve always been interested ………………………………………………….
7. I’m very keen ………………………………………………….
8. A lot of people are afraid ………………………………………………….
9. People in my country are very different ………………………………………………….
10. When I went to ……………………………….., I was very surprised ………………………………………………….

14.4 A good dictionary will tell you if a verb or adjective is usually followed by a special preposition. Sometimes the preposition is shown after the verb or adjective; sometimes it is illustrated in the example sentences. Use a dictionary to find the preposition that often follows these words.
fond (adj) concentrate (v) responsible (adj) rely (v)
Preposition + noun

A  Common patterns

There are many expressions formed by a preposition + noun, and sometimes a preposition is used with a particular meaning in a number of expressions, so they are very common.

A book by Stephen King, a film by Steven Spielberg, a song by Elton John.
You can go for a walk, for a drive, for a run, for a swim.
You can travel by car, by plane, by bus, by coach, by train, by taxi (but on foot).
I heard it on the radio; I saw it on TV; I spoke to her on the phone (but I read it in the newspaper, in a magazine).
The man in the dark suit (= wearing the dark suit); the woman in the red dress.

B  Fixed expressions

Sometimes it is difficult to know why a particular preposition is used, and you must learn these as fixed expressions.

I took his pen by mistake. (= I thought it was my pen)
I did all the work by myself. (= on my own; without help from others)
The shoes are made by hand. (= not by machine)
The workers are on strike. (= they refuse to work because of a problem over pay, hours, etc.)
I met them by chance. (= it wasn’t planned – it was luck)
The children are on holiday. (= they are having a holiday)

He broke the plate by accident.
(= he did not want to do it – it was an error/mistake)

He broke the plate on purpose.
(= he wanted to do it and intended to do it)

There are two million out of work. (= without a job)
There were at least fifty people at the party. (= a minimum of 50)

C  In time or on time?

Sometimes two prepositions can be used with the same noun, but the meaning is different.
Lessons begin at 8.30 and I always arrive on time. (= at 8.30)
Lessons begin at 8.30 and I always get there in time. (= before 8.30; I’m not late)
In the end we went home. (= finally, after a long period)
At the end of the book they get married.
The two men are in business. (= they are businessmen)
The two men are in Germany on business. (= they are there for work and not for a holiday)
I’ll see you in a moment. (= very soon)
I can’t speak to you at the moment. (= right now)
Exercises

15.1 Complete these sentences with the correct preposition. Cover the opposite page first.

1. I saw it _______ TV.
2. They came _______ car.
3. They are all _______ strike.
4. He is here _______ business.
5. I did it _______ my own.
6. It was written _______ Goethe.
7. We went _______ a walk.
8. I read it _______ a magazine.
9. He's _______ holiday this week.
10. She took it _______ mistake.
11. I went _______ the afternoon.
12. He came _______ foot.
13. The clothes are made _______ hand.
14. She broke it _______ accident.
15. He did it _______ purpose.
16. I'll see you _______ a moment.
17. I'm very busy _______ the moment.
18. It's very quiet _______ night.
19. We met _______ chance.
20. She's _______ least 25 years old.

15.2 Replace the underlined words with a suitable prepositional phrase. Look at the example first.

Example: The meeting was planned for 11 a.m. and we got here at 11 a.m. _______ on time

1. I wrote the reports _______ any help from anyone else.
2. Did you get to the cinema _______ the film started?
3. Thousands of people are _______ jobs in my town.
4. She's _______ a phone call.
5. I saw the advertisement _______ I was watching TV last night.
6. He opened her letter _______ he thought it was addressed to him.
7. It was a very long journey but _______ we got there.
8. He gets killed _______ the last scene of the film.
9. I'm afraid I'm very busy _______ now.
10. I saw her yesterday _______ I didn't plan to see her.

15.3 Respond to these questions with a negative answer and a suitable prepositional phrase. Look at the example first.

Example: Was it the man wearing the blue shirt?
No, the man in the white shirt.

1. Did she hit him on purpose?
2. Did they go by car?
3. Are they here on holiday?
4. Did you read about the accident in the newspaper?
5. Did the others help him?
6. Do you want to sit down and have a rest?

15.4 Look at the prepositional phrases on the opposite page again, and make a list of the ones which are not exact translations from your own language. Put the list in your pocket and carry it around with you. Test yourself as often as possible by thinking of a translation and/or explanation and/or example sentence for each one.
Formation
A phrasal verb is a verb combined with an adverb or preposition, and occasionally with an adverb and preposition.
The price of petrol may go up (= increase) again next week.
He fell over (= fell to the ground) when he was running for the bus.
She's promised to find out (= learn/discover) the name of that new hotel.
Who is going to look after (= take care of) the children when she goes into hospital?
If you don't understand the meaning, you can look it up (= find the meaning in a book – in this case a dictionary).
He doesn't get on with (= have a good relationship with) his parents. (verb + adv + prep)

Meaning
Sometimes the meaning of a phrasal verb is very similar to the base verb, and the adverb just emphasises the meaning of the base verb, e.g. stand up, wake up, save up, hurry up, sit down, lie down and send off (e.g. a letter). On other occasions, the adverb adds the idea of completing the action of the verb, e.g. drink up (= finish your drink), eat up (= finish eating), finish off.
But more often, the meaning of a phrasal verb is very different from the base verb, e.g. go up doesn't mean the same as go; look after is different from look; and look after is also quite different from look up. An adverb or preposition can therefore change the meaning of a verb a great deal.
Here are some more examples of this type of phrasal verb.
It took her a long time to get over (= get better / recover from) her illness.
He told me to carry on (= continue) as far as the traffic lights.
I persuaded my wife to give up (= stop) smoking.
I can't make any sandwiches because we've run out of bread. (= the bread is finished / all used, so we have no bread)
In the end my next-door neighbour had to come and put out (= extinguish/stop) the fire.

Multiple meaning
Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning, so you must be careful when you see a phrasal verb you think you know, or look up the meaning in a dictionary. In the examples marked *, the phrasal verb is much more natural than the explanation in brackets.
It was hot so I decided to *take off (= remove) my jacket.
I am always nervous when the plane *takes off (= leaves the ground).
I don't think I'll get through (= finish) this report before five o'clock.
I think she'll get through (= pass) the exam.
I *picked up the rubbish (= took it from the ground or a low place)
    and put it in the bin.
I had to go to the shop to pick up (= collect) my photos.
My alarm clock didn't go off (= ring) this morning.
The bomb could go off (= explode) at any minute.
The fish will *go off (= go bad) if you don't put it in the fridge.
Exercises

16.1 Fill the gaps to complete the phrasal verb in each sentence.
1 We went round the school and .............. up all the rubbish.
2 I don't think they ever .............. out how the man escaped.
3 This milk smells horrible; I think it has .............. off.
4 Do you think they'll .............. through the exam next week?
5 They had a bad relationship at first, but she .............. on very well with him now.
6 The price has .............. up three times this year.
7 I agreed to .............. after my sister's cat when she goes to France.
8 We can .............. on until the teacher tells us to stop.
9 Why didn't your alarm clock .............. off this morning?
10 I'm afraid this photocopier has .............. out of paper, but you can use the other one in my office.

16.2 Complete these sentences in a logical way.
1 It will take her a long time to get over ..........................................
2 I'm afraid we've run out of .....................................................
3 He had to look it up ..................................................................
4 I don't really get on with .........................................................
5 She came in and took off ................................................................
6 I had to put out .........................................................................
7 Who is going to look after ................................................................
8 I went to the garage to pick up .................................................
9 The plane took off ......................................................................
10 My rent is going up ..................................................................

16.3 Look at the dictionary entry for pick up, and match the meanings with the sentences below.

1 I said I would pick her up at the airport.
2 I picked up most of the rubbish that was on the floor.
3 Where did he pick up that strange accent?
4 Business was bad at the beginning of the year but it's picking up now.
5 I hurt my back when I tried to pick up that chair.

16.4 Write two sentences for each of these phrasal verbs to show their different meanings.
pick up take off go off get through
Look at Unit 16 on the form and meaning of phrasal verbs before you do this unit.

**A**

**Grammar: intransitive verbs**

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive and do not need a direct object.

The children are growing up. (= getting older and more mature)

The doctor told me to lie down on the bed.

Don’t wait out there. Please come in. (= enter)

I’m going to stay in (= stay at home) this evening.

With these verbs, you cannot put another word between the verb and adverb.

**B**

**Grammar: transitive verbs**

But many phrasal verbs are transitive and do need a direct object. With some of these, you can put the object between the verb and adverb:

Put on your shoes ✓ Turn on the TV ✓

Put your shoes on ✓ Turn the TV on ✓

If the object is a pronoun, it must go between verb and adverb.

Put them on ✓ [NOT Put on them] Turn it on ✓ [NOT Turn on it]

Note: A dictionary will show you if you can put a word between the verb and adverb:

Put on your shoes

Turn on the TV

Put your shoes on

Turn the TV on

If the object is a pronoun, it must go between verb and adverb.

Put them on ✓ [NOT Put on them] Turn it on ✓ [NOT Turn on it]

Note: A dictionary will show you if you can put a word between the verb and adverb:

**C**

**Style: formal or informal**

Some phrasal verbs can be used equally in written or spoken English. Sometimes this is because there is no other easy way to express the meaning of the phrasal verb.

I always wake up early, even at weekends.

The car broke down (= went wrong; stopped working) on the motorway.

The plane couldn’t take off because of bad weather.

Thieves broke into (= entered by force and illegally) the house and took money, credit cards and all my jewellery.

**D**

**Informal phrasal verbs**

But most phrasal verbs are informal and are more common in spoken English. In written English there is often a more formal word with the same meaning.

We had to make up a story. (= invent/create from our imagination)

I can usually get by on about £200 a week. (= manage)

You can leave out question 7. (= omit, i.e. you don’t need to do question 7)

They’ve got a problem and they asked me to sort it out. (= resolve (it) / find a solution / do something about it)
Exercises

These exercises also practise and test some of the phrasal verbs from Unit 16.

17.1 Complete these sentences in a logical way.
1 I'm not very good at making up....................................................................................
2 Could you lie down ........................................................................................................
3 She asked me to turn on ..............................................................................................
4 Two men tried to break into .........................................................................................
5 We have asked an engineer to come and sort out .......................................................
6 Are you going to stay in .................................................................................................
7 Why did you leave out ...................................................................................................
8 I'm afraid we broke down ............................................................................................
9 Can you get by ..............................................................................................................
10 I grew up .......................................................................................................................

17.2 Is it possible to separate the two parts of the phrasal verb in the sentences below? Look at the examples first, and use a dictionary to check your answers. (You can also check your answers in the answer key.)

Examples: I forgot to get off the bus. NO (get the bus off X)
           Why did he take off his trousers? YES (take his trousers off ✓)
1 She decided to carry on working.
2 He had to put out the fire.
3 Could you turn on the radio?
4 I had to lie down for a few minutes.
5 Could you go to the shop for me? We've just run out of coffee.
6 I think she made up that story.
7 I can't get by on the money my parents give me.
8 Children grow up very quickly these days.
9 I turned off the light when I went to bed.
10 Can we leave out this question?

17.3 Make these texts more informal by changing some of the verbs to phrasal verbs with the same meaning. (There are three in each text.)

1 The cost of living is increasing all the time and I find it quite difficult to manage on my salary. But I think I can probably continue for a few months.
2 She told us to enter, but then we had to remove our shoes and I had to extinguish my cigarette.
3 The teacher told the class to invent a story to go with the picture in their books, and then continue with exercise 4. She said they could all omit exercise 5.

17.4 There are many phrasal verbs in other units. Can you find:
1 three phrasal verbs in Unit 21 on page 46?
2 three phrasal verbs in Unit 47 on page 98?
3 three phrasal verbs in Unit 48 on page 100?
4 three phrasal verbs in Unit 56 on page 116?
5 three phrasal verbs in Unit 62 on page 128?
6 three phrasal verbs in Unit 75 on page 154?
18 Idioms and fixed expressions

A What is an idiom?

An idiom is a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words, and often difficult to understand from the individual words. Many of the phrasal verbs in Units 16 and 17 were idiomatic. Here are some more common idioms.

The teacher told us to get a move on. (= hurry; be quick)
My wife and I take it in turns to cook. (= I cook one day, she cooks the next, etc.)
I don’t know the answer off-hand. (= without looking it up or asking someone)
It’s not far. We can take a short cut (= a quick way) through the park.
I'm not very good at small talk. (= social talk; not about serious things)

B Fixed expressions

There are also expressions in English where the meaning is easy to understand, but the same idea in your language may need a completely different expression. In other words, if you just translate from your language, you may say something in English which is completely wrong. For this reason, you need to learn some expressions as idioms. For example:

A: What was wrong with the hotel?
B: Well, for a start it was next to a motorway and very noisy. And to make matters worse, there were factories on the other side of the road, which stayed open 24 hours a day.

It’s not a problem in the short term (= at the moment) but in the long term (= for the longer future) we will need to think about it and probably spend some money on it.

C Using idioms

Idioms are important but they can be difficult to use correctly.

• With many idioms, if you make just a small mistake, it can sound strange, funny, or badly wrong. For example: get a move; a small talk; put an eye on, off-hands, etc.
• Idioms often have special features: they may be informal or funny or ironic; they may only be used by certain people (e.g. young children, or teenagers, or elderly people); they may only appear in limited contexts; they have special grammar. For these reasons, you can often ‘learn’ the meaning of an idiom but then use it incorrectly. For example: After her husband died she was down in the dumps. (This idiom means ‘sad and depressed’ but is completely wrong here: the situation is too serious and the idiom is too informal.)

D Easy idioms to use

Some idiomatic expressions are used on their own, or with just one or two other words. These are often the easiest to use.

A: Are you coming?    A: Can I borrow your dictionary?
B: Yes, hang on. (= wait)    B: Sure, go ahead. (= help yourself; take it; do it)
A: What’s up? (= what’s the matter?)    A: I don’t know which one to choose.
B: Nothing.    B: Well, make up your mind. (= make a decision)
A: I’m really sorry but I’ve forgotten to bring the book you lent me.
B: That’s OK. Never mind. (= it’s OK, don’t worry; it’s not important)
Exercises

18.1 It can be difficult to guess the meaning of an idiom, especially if you do not have the full context. Look at these examples (they are not presented on the opposite page).

1 I feel like a drink.  4 She was pulling my leg when she said that.
2 They’ve gone for good.  5 I can probably make do with a smaller flat.
3 I’m tied up all afternoon.

Here is a fuller context for each of the above idioms. Can you guess the meaning now?

1 A: Are you hungry?
   B: No, but I feel like a drink.  Do you think they’ll ever come back to England?
   B: No, they’ve gone for good.  Do you have a lot of clients to see?
   B: Yes, I’m tied up all afternoon.
2 A: Did she tell you there were no bathrooms in the hotel?
   B: Yes. I think she was pulling my leg when she said that.  Do you really need a large flat?
   B: Well, it’s nice to have a big place, but I can probably make do with a smaller flat.

18.2 Replace the underlined words in each dialogue with a suitable idiomatic expression from the opposite page. (But try to answer the questions before looking at the opposite page.) Can you think of similar expressions in your own language?

1 A: Is Rebecca here?
   B: Yes, wait a minute. I’ll get her.
2 A: Does it take long to get there?
   B: No, I know a quick way.
3 A: Could I borrow this for a minute?
   B: Yes, take it.
4 A: Sorry I can’t come on Thursday.
   B: That’s OK. Don’t worry.
5 A: What’s the matter?
   B: Nothing. Why?
6 A: Look after my things for a minute?
   B: Yeah, sure.
7 A: Do we have to go now?
   B: Yes, hurry up, otherwise we’ll be late.
8 A: You’ll have to decide soon.
   B: Yes I know, but it’s very difficult.

18.3 Complete the expressions in these sentences.

1 It wasn’t a very successful holiday. For a .......... the beach was a long way from our hotel; then to make .......... worse, the car broke down on the third day and we had to walk to the beach. the rest of the time.
2 We take it in .......... to look after the dog.
3 She asked me about the times of the trains but I couldn’t tell her off- .......... .
4 I don’t enjoy parties where you just stand around and make .......... talk with lots of people you don’t know.
5 We can probably make .......... with a three-roomed flat for the moment, but in the long .......... we will have to think about moving into a bigger place.

18.4 Can you find at least three idiomatic expressions in this text. What do they mean?

I went to stay with my cousin last week. We are the same age but have very little in common: he loves sport and I hate it; I’m mad about music and he’s not interested in it. As you can imagine, we didn’t have a very good time together, and by about Thursday we were really getting on each other’s nerves, so I decided to come home.
There are many common expressions with these verbs, and often they are different in other languages, so you need to learn them.

**Things we make**
- a mistake (= an error)
- a meal (= prepare and cook something to eat)
- money (= become rich)
- friends
- a decision
- a noise
- progress (U) (= improvement)

He made a few mistakes in the exam.
I had to make my own dinner last night.
He made a lot of money when he worked in America.
It's not always easy to make friends in a foreign country.
We can have the red ones or the green ones, but we must make a decision (choose the red or green) before 6 p.m.
I can't work when the children make a lot of noise.
Her English is good now; she has made a lot of progress.

**Things we do**
- homework (U)
- the housework (U) (= cleaning)
- subjects (= study subjects)
- a course
- the shopping (= buy food)
- research (U) (= detailed study in one subject)
- (someone) a favour (= do something to help someone)
- something/anything/nothing

I forgot to do my English homework last night.
My mother does all the housework in our house.
Did you do English at school?
I did a one-week course in word processing.
I always do the shopping at the weekend.
He's doing research in physics at Rome University.
I don't have any coffee. Could you do me a favour and lend me some?
I didn't do anything last night. That boy has done nothing all day.

**Things we have**
- a rest (= relax / do nothing)
- food (= eat food) and drink
- a drink (= drink something)
- a bath/shower
- a party
- a baby (= be pregnant or give birth)
- a (nice/great/terrible) time

They had a long rest after the game.
I had steak but Paul just had a cup of tea.
Let's have a drink before dinner.
I always have a bath when I get up.
I'm having a party for my birthday.
Mary is having a baby next month.
We had a very nice time in Switzerland last year.

**Things we take**
- an exam (also ‘do an exam’)
- a photo
- a decision (also ‘make’)
- a shower (also ‘have’)
- a bus/train/plane/taxi

I'm going to take four exams next month.
She took lots of photos on holiday.
I'm not very good at taking decisions.
I'm just going to take a shower before lunch.
We were late, so we took a taxi to the airport.

*Note: Notice the use of be + adjective [NOT have + noun] in these expressions:
She was lucky
I'm hungry (= I want to eat)
I'm thirsty (= I want a drink)
Exercises

19.1 Cross out the incorrect verbs in these sentences. Both verbs may be correct.

1. I couldn’t do/make the homework last night.
2. She’s going to make/have a party for her birthday.
3. Did he do/make many mistakes?
4. I often make/do the housework.
5. Did you make/take many photos?
6. When do you take/do your next exam?
7. I want to do/make a course in English.
8. We must take/make a decision soon.
9. He is doing/making research in chemistry.
10. They did/made a lot of noise during the party.

19.2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a suitable word or expression from the opposite page.

Example: I want to eat something. I’m hungry

1. Let’s drink something.
2. I’m going to prepare lunch tomorrow.
3. I’ll clean the house at the weekend.
4. I ate a pizza in the restaurant.
5. I want a drink.

6. I usually buy my food on Saturday morning.
7. They both want to become rich.
8. When are they going to decide?
9. I think she enjoyed herself last night.
10. She is definitely improving. How many driving lessons has she had now?

19.3 Look at the four split pictures. Describe what happened using at least two expressions from the opposite page in each one. Look at the example first.

Last Friday evening I had a party but the next-door neighbour complained and said we were making too much noise.

19.4 Test yourself. Without looking at the opposite page, write down six things you can:

Examples:
make a mistake...  do the homework...  have a rest...
20 Give, keep, break, catch, see

These common verbs have many different meanings (some of them in other parts of this book). This unit looks at some important meanings of these verbs, and in some cases they combine with specific nouns, e.g. give someone a ring, break the law, etc. You can learn these as expressions.

A Give

I'll give you a ring this evening. (= phone you this evening)
Could you give me a hand? (= help me)
Please give my regards to Paul. (= please say 'hello' to him from me) or
  If you see Paul, please give him my regards.

B Keep

The coat will keep you dry; the gloves will keep your hands warm. (= the coat/gloves will help you to stay dry/warm) [keep + noun/pronoun + adjective]
I keep losing my glasses; I keep getting backache. (= I lose my glasses / get backache again and again) [keep + -ing]
Please keep in touch. (= don't forget to stay in contact, e.g. phone or write to me sometimes)
The school keeps a record (= clear written information) of the number of times that students are absent.

C Break

He broke the world record again. (= created a new record, e.g. He ran the 100 metres in 9.85 seconds, which is 0.1 seconds faster than anyone else.)
Most people break the law at some point in their life. (= do something wrong / against the law)
In my first lesson with a new class, I usually do something to break the ice. (= to make people feel more relaxed when they first meet strangers)

D Catch

We can catch a bus down the road. (= take a bus/travel by bus)
How did you catch that cold? (= get that cold/virus)
Catch the ball and throw it to James.

E See

A: This part of the picture doesn't look right compared with the other part.
B: Yes, I see what you mean. (= I understand what you are saying)
A: Do you think we need to hire a car?
B: I don't know. I'll see (= I'll ask and find out) what the others say.
I don't/can't see the point of practising six hours a day. (= I don't understand the reason for practising six hours a day; I think it's crazy)
Exercises

20.1 Match the nouns on the right with the verbs on the left to form common word partnerships. (There is one noun you need to use twice.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>break (2)</th>
<th>keep (2)</th>
<th>the ball</th>
<th>the law</th>
<th>a cold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>catch (3)</td>
<td>give (2)</td>
<td>me a hand</td>
<td>a bus</td>
<td>in touch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a record</td>
<td>my regards to ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20.2 Fill the gaps with the correct verb in these sentences.

1 I don’t ............... the point of spending a lot of money on tickets when we can watch the concert on television.
2 These boots should ............... your feet warm and dry.
3 Please ............... my regards to your mother when you go back home.
4 Before we make a decision, let’s ............... what Patricia says.
5 If it’s too far to walk, we can ............... a bus.
6 I don’t know what the problem is, but I ............... getting headaches.
7 When I meet people on holiday I always promise to ............... in touch, but I never do.
8 I didn’t really enjoy the holiday because I ............... a cold on the second day and spent most of the week sneezing and blowing my nose.
9 When you organise a conference or a course, I think you need something to ............... the ice, otherwise people are a bit nervous of each other.
10 I don’t ............... the point of spending a lot of money on children’s clothes because they only last for a few months and then they’re too small.

20.3 What expressions are represented by these pictures? Can you complete the sentences below? Look at the example first.

Example: I’ll ............... you a ring.

1 How did you ............... ?
2 He agreed to ............... 
3 I decided to ............... 
4 He finally ............... 

20.4 Look through the key expressions in bold on the opposite page again. Can you translate these expressions into your own language? If so, do you use the same verb in your own language? Concentrate on the ones that are different.
Get: uses and expressions

A Meanings
Get is an informal word, so it is more common in spoken English than written English. It has many meanings. Here are some of the basic ones.

- receive
  - I got a letter this morning.
  - You get a certificate at the end of the course.

- obtain
  - (sometimes = buy) She's trying to get a new job.
  - Where did you get those shoes?

- become
  - (= a change in state) It gets dark very early at this time of year.
  - My hands are getting cold.

- arrive
  - When did you get here?
  - I'll phone when I get home.

- fetch
  - Could you get the books from the cupboard?
  - She went to get the children from school.

B 'Get' + past participle
We sometimes use the more informal 'get' + past participle:

- get married (= marry)
  - She got married in France.

- get divorced (= divorce)
  - They got divorced last year. (= the marriage has ended officially)

- get dressed (= dress)
  - I got dressed quickly and went out.

- get undressed (= undress)
  - He got undressed and got into bed.

- get changed (= change clothes)
  - When I got home I went to my room and got changed.

- get lost (= lose one's way)
  - I got lost on my way to the station.

C Common collocations
Get is so common with certain words (often describing a change of state) that it is a good idea to learn them as expressions.

- It's getting hot/cold
  - I'm getting hot/cold
tired
better/worse
hungry
ready (= preparing)

Note: The expression getting better at something can describe an improvement in your ability to do something, e.g. I'm getting better at English/swimming; it also describes an improvement in your health, e.g. She was very ill but she's getting better now. (# getting worse)

D Phrasal verbs and special expressions with 'get'
I get on very well with my sister. (= I have a very good relationship with my sister)

How are you getting on?  
(a) (= a general question: how is life?)
(b) (= what progress are you making, e.g. with your English?)

It's difficult to get to know people in a foreign country. (= meet people and make friends)

I want to get rid of all my old records. (= sell them or throw them away or give them away)

My alarm wakes me up at 7 a.m., but I don't usually get up (= get out of bed) until 7.15.
Exercises

21.1 Write a synonym for get in each of these sentences.
1 Where can I get something to eat round here?
2 I'm just going to get some paper from the office. I'll be back in a minute.
3 What time did they get here last night?
4 He got very angry when I told him what you did with his CDs.
5 I couldn't get a room; all the hotels were full.
6 We normally get five weeks' holiday.
7 This book is getting quite interesting.
8 I must get some stamps before I go home.
9 He sent the letter last week but I didn't get it until yesterday.
10 Do they often get here early?

21.2 Write appropriate sentences using I'm getting + adjective or it's getting + adjective.
1 A: .................................................................
   B: Yes it is. I'll turn on the heating.
2 A: .................................................................
   B: OK, let's have something to eat, then.
3 A: .................................................................
   B: Yes me too. I'll open the window.
4 A: .................................................................
   B: Yes it is. I think I'll go to bed.
5 A: .................................................................
   B: Yes. I'll put the lights on.
6 A: .................................................................
   B: No you're not. You're getting much better. You understand a lot now.

21.3 Rewrite each of these sentences using an expression with get. The meaning must stay the same.
1 They're preparing to go out.
   They're .................................................................
2 I had to put on my clothes very quickly.
   I had to .................................................................
3 How do you meet people and make friends in this country?
   How do you .................................................................
4 I have a good relationship with my boss.
   I .................................................................
5 We're going to throw away most of these chairs.
   We're going to .................................................................
6 Someone told me you're doing a new course. How's it going?
   Someone told me you're doing a new course. .................................................................

21.4 Write down examples of 'get' that you see or hear, then try to group your sentences according to the different meanings. This will help you to get (= obtain) an idea of the ways in which this important word is used in English.
Go: uses and expressions

A  Come vs. go

Go usually expresses a movement away from the position the speaker is in now; come expresses a movement towards the speaker.

Imagine you are at school. The time is 9.30 a.m.

I had to go to Jimmy’s to pick up some books; then I went to the post office before I came to school.

Sometimes the speaker is in one place but imagines that they are already in another place. When Thomas meets Marta in Spain, he invites her to Switzerland. He says: ‘Would you like to come and visit me in Bern?’ (He imagines he is there and so her movement is towards him.)

We can also imagine that the listener is in a different place. Talking to Marta, Thomas says: ‘I’ll come to your flat at 7.30 p.m.’ (She will be at home, so his movement is towards her.)

Note: It is a similar difference between bring and take:
I think I’ll take my bike to the match and Peter can bring it back here tomorrow.

B  Different meanings of ‘go’

- When you leave a place in order to do an activity, you often express it either with go + ing noun or go (out) + for a + noun. Here are some common examples:

  We could go shopping.
  riding (on horses).
  They went sightseeing.
  swimming (also ‘for a swim’).

  She wants to go (out) for a walk.
  (out) for a drink.
  Let’s go (out) for a drive.
  (out) for a meal.

- Go is followed by certain adjectives to describe a change in state (usually to a worse state) with the meaning ‘become’ (get is also used with some adjectives).

  My brother’s hair is going grey, and my father is going bald. (= losing all his hair)
  The company went bankrupt last year. (= lost all its money and had to stop operating)
  My grandmother is going deaf. (deaf = cannot hear)
  He’ll go mad (= get very angry infml) if you wear his jacket.

- It is often used to describe the speed something is travelling (also do):

  We were going about 80 kph when the accident happened.

- When you want to say/ask if a road or form of transport takes you somewhere:

  Does this bus go to (= take me to) the National Gallery?
  I don’t think this road goes to (= leads to) the station.

C  Expressions

I’ve never tried bungee jumping but I’d love to have a go. (= try it)

How’s it going? (= How are you? infml) And you can use the same question if you want to know if something is easy, difficult, enjoyable, etc. For example, if you are doing an exercise in class, your teacher may ask: How’s it going? (also How are you getting on?)

It’s my go (also it’s my turn). This expression is used in games such as chess or monopoly where you move from one player to another, then back.
**Exercises**

22.1 Complete the dialogue with suitable forms of these verbs: *come, go, bring, take*. (There are two verbs that can be used in one of the answers.)

A: What time are you ............... to Jim's party this evening?
B: I'm not sure because Christopher is ............... here first, and then we'll ............... together.
A: Right. Do you know what's happening about the music?
B: Yeah. I'm going to ............... some CDs, and Sue is ............... her guitar. I'll probably leave quite early though, so do you think you could ............... my CDs back here tomorrow?
A: Yeah sure. What time.
B: Well, I want to ............... to the shops in the morning. Could you ............... before ten?
A: No problem.

22.2 Replace the underlined words and expressions. The meaning must stay the same.

1. It's hard to say exactly but I think the lorry was going about 60 kph.
2. Some people aren't interested in scuba diving but I've always wanted to have a go.
3. Come on John, it's your go.
4. Hi Sue. How's it going?
5. Excuse me. Does this road go to the bus station?
6. A: How's it going?
   B: Not bad. We've nearly finished the first exercise.

22.3 Complete these sentences with an *-ing noun* (e.g. riding), or for a + noun (e.g. for a walk).

1. I went ............... this morning and bought some books and clothes.
2. We didn't have much food in the house so we decided to go out ............... 
3. Why don't we go ............... in that nice new bar near the square?
4. I wanted to go ............... because I had never been to Venice before, but the others wanted to hire a car and go ............... in the countryside.
5. The pool was at the end of the road, so we decided to go ............... 
6. There are some stables near where we live with about a dozen horses, and we go ............... most weekends.

22.4 Complete these sentences with a suitable word. Use a dictionary to help you.

1. You can wear a hearing aid if you go ............... 
2. If business doesn't improve they could go ............... 
3. You can dye (= change the colour of) your hair if you start going ............... 
4. And you can wear a wig if you go ............... 
5. If she sees the dog destroying her flowers, she'll go ............... 

22.5 Look back at the different meanings of *go* (as verb and noun) on the opposite page. Translate these meanings into your own language. How many meanings use the word for *go* in your language? How many are expressed with a different word or in a different way? Compare with someone who speaks the same language if possible.

22.6 Now look up *go* in a good English dictionary. You will find many meanings (including phrasal verbs and idioms), but just concentrate on two or three that you think may be useful to you. Try to learn them. Write down the meanings with example sentences in your notebook. Write a translation as well if you want.
Apologies, excuses, and thanks

A Apologies (= saying sorry)

We can apologise (= say sorry) in different ways in different situations:

- **Situation**
  - (I'm) sorry. I beg your pardon (*fml*).
    - A general apology, e.g. you close the door in someone's face, interrupt someone, etc.
  - I'm very/terribly/so/awfully sorry.
    - A stronger apology, e.g. you step on someone's foot or take their coat by mistake.
  - I'm very/really sorry I'm late.
    - When you are late for an appointment.
  - Sorry to keep you waiting. I won't be long. (= I will talk to you soon)
    - Someone is waiting to see you and you are busy, e.g. with someone else.

*Note:* In formal situations (especially in writing), we often use apologise and apology:

- I must apologise for (being late).
- I would like to apologise for (the delay. Unfortunately, ...)
- Please accept our apologies for the mistakes in your order. We tried to.

B Excuses and promises

If the situation is quite important we usually add an explanation or excuse after the apology. An excuse is the reason for the apology, which may or may not be true. (If it is not true, it should still be a reason that people will believe.) Here are some common excuses:

- I'm sorry I'm late but I was delayed/held up at the airport.
- I'm sorry I'm late, but my train was cancelled. (= the train was timetabled but did not run)

*Note:* To be/get delayed or be/get held up (*infml*) both mean to be late because of a problem that is out of your control.

- If you are responsible for a problem, you can offer or promise to do something about it.
  - I'm sorry about the mess in here. I'll clear it up. (= I'll tidy it up)
  - I'm sorry about the confusion, but I'll sort it out. (= I will solve the problems)

C Reassuring people

When people apologise to us, it is very common to say something to reassure them (= tell them that 'everything is OK'), and that we are not angry. These are all common expressions. Note that we often use two of them to emphasise the fact that 'it's OK'.

A: I'm sorry I'm late. B: That's OK. Don't worry. or Never mind. It doesn't matter. or That's OK. No problem.

D Thanks

These are the most common ways of thanking people in everyday situations:

A: Here's your pen. B: Oh, thank you / thanks (very much).
A: I'll answer that. B: Oh, thanks a lot (*infml*).
A: I'll post those letters for you. B: Oh, thank you. That's very kind of you.

If you go to someone's house for dinner, or stay with people in an English-speaking country, you will need to thank them for their hospitality (= when people are kind and friendly towards their guests). You could say something like this:

Thank you very much for inviting me. It's been a lovely evening.
Thank you very much for everything. You've been very kind.
Exercises

23.1 The opposite page includes a number of expressions, or groups of words that often appear together. How many can you remember? Complete these dialogues in a suitable way.

1 A: I'm ............... sorry.
   B: That's OK.
2 A: I'm sorry ............... late. I'm afraid I got ............... up.
   B: That's OK. Never ............... 
3 A: Sorry to ............... you waiting.
   B: That's OK. No ............... 
4 A: I'll carry your bags for you.
   B: Oh, thank you. That's very ............... of you.
5 A: I must ............... for missing the meeting.
   B: That's OK. It doesn't ............... 
6 A: I'm busy right now but I won't be ............... 
   B: ............... mind. I'll come back later.
7 A: I ............... your pardon.
   B: ............... OK. Don't ............... 
8 A: I think the boss has got a real problem.
   B: Yes, but don't worry, he'll ............... it out.

23.2 What could you say in these situations? (If it is an apology, give an explanation/excuse if you think it is necessary.)

1 You get on a bus at the same time as another person and he/she almost falls over.

2 You arrange to meet some friends in the centre of town but you are twenty minutes late.

3 You are pushing your car into a side road and a stranger offers to help you.

4 A friend borrows a pen from you and then loses it. When they apologise, you want to reassure them.

5 Some English friends invite you to dinner. How could you thank them as you leave their house at the end of the evening?

6 A colleague at work tells you that a number of files are in a mess: papers are all in the wrong order and he doesn't know what to do. When he apologises to you for this mess, how can you reassure him, and what offer can you make?

7 You are unable to go to a meeting you arranged with a client at their office, and now you must write to them to explain.

8 Your company promised to send some information about new products to a customer last week. You still haven't sent the information and must now write to explain.

23.3 Do you apologise, reassure, explain and thank people in similar ways in your own language? Read the left-hand page again and think about any differences between English and your language.
Requests, invitations and suggestions

A Requests and replies

We use different expressions to introduce a request – it depends who we are talking to, and the ‘size’ of the request (‘big’ or ‘small’). These are some of the most common (the ‘small’ requests first), with suitable positive and negative replies.

A: Could you pass me the salt?  
B: Yes, sure.

A: Could I (possibly) borrow your dictionary?  
B: Yes, of course, or Yes, help yourself (= yes, take it) or Go ahead.

A: Do you think you could possibly lend me two or three pounds?  
B: Yes sure or I’m afraid I can’t.  
I’m afraid not.  
I wish I could but, / I’m sorry but,  
I haven’t any money on me at all.

A: I was wondering if I could (possibly) leave work half an hour early today. or Would you mind if I left work …  
B: Yeah, no problem. or Well I’d rather you didn’t (actually), because …

B Invitations and replies

A: Would you like to go out this evening?  
B: Yeah great / lovely / I’d love to or I’m sorry I can’t.

A: We’re going to a restaurant and we were wondering if you’d like to come with us?  
B: I’d love to, but I’m afraid I can’t.  
Oh, I’m afraid I have to look after my younger sister.

C Suggestions and replies

Here are some common ways of asking for and making suggestions (= ideas for things to do/say/make, etc.) and suitable replies.

Asking for suggestions
What shall we do tonight?  Where shall we go this evening?

Making suggestions
How about (or what about) going to the cinema? (Note: How/What about + -ing)  
We could go to the leisure centre and watch the basketball.  
Why don’t we try that new club in the main square?

Responding
Yeah, great / fine / OK / that’s a good idea.  
Yeah, if you like. (= if you want to go, then I am happy to go)  
Yes, I don’t mind. (= I have no preference)  
I think I’d rather (= I would prefer to) go out for a meal.

Note: In this situation, learners often say ‘it’s the same for me’. We don’t use this expression in English; we say I don’t mind.
Exercises

24.1 Correct the mistakes in this dialogue.
A: Do you like to go out this evening?
B: I'm afraid but I haven't got any money.
A: That's OK, I'll pay. How about go to see a film?
B: No, actually I think I'd rather to stay at home and do my homework.
A: Why you don't do your homework this afternoon?
B: I'm busy this afternoon.
A: OK. How about tomorrow evening, then?
B: Yeah good.
A: Great. What film shall we go to?
B: For me it's the same.

24.2 Complete these dialogues with a suitable word or phrase.
1 A: Could you open that window? It's very hot in here.
   B: Yeah, ..................
2 A: Clive and Sally are here at the moment and we were .................. if you'd like to come over and join us for a meal this evening?
   B: Yes, I'd ..................
3 A: What .................. we do this evening?
   B: I don't know really. Any ideas?
   A: Why .................. go to the cinema? We haven't been for ages.
   B: Yeah, that's a ..................
4 A: OK. Where .................. we go on Saturday?
   B: .................. going to the beach if the weather is good.
   A: Yeah. Or we .................. try that new sports centre just outside town.
   B: Mmm. I think I'd .................. go to the beach.
   A: Yeah OK, if you ..................
5 A: What .................. you like to do this weekend?
   B: I don't .................. You decide.

24.3 Here are eight requests, invitations or suggestions. Respond to each one as fast as you can with a suitable reply. If possible, do this activity with someone else: one of you asks the questions, the other answers.
1 Could I borrow a pen for a minute?
2 Do you think you could post a letter for me?
3 I was wondering if you've got a suitcase you could lend me?
4 Would you like to go out this evening?
5 I've got some tickets for a concert of classical music and I was wondering if you'd like to go with me?
6 How about going to a football match at the weekend?
7 Why don't we meet this afternoon and practise our English for an hour?
8 We could invite some other people from our English class to meet us as well.

24.4 There will be many situations when you make requests, invitations and suggestions in your own language, and respond to the requests, invitations and suggestions of others. Try using English expressions in place of your first language. If your friends don't understand, you can teach them a bit of English.
Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing

A. Asking someone for their opinion
What do you think of his new book?
How do you feel about working with the others?
What are your feelings (pl) about the change in the timetable?
What’s your honest opinion of that painting?

B. Giving your opinion
I think Charles had the best idea.
I don’t think he knew very much about the subject.
Personally, I think his first book is terrible.
In my opinion we should sell the old car and buy a new one.
As far as I’m concerned the whole evening was a waste of time.

Note:
• If you want to say something isn’t a good idea you make ‘think’ negative:
  I don’t think it’s a good idea. [NOT I think it’s not a good idea.]
• Personally and As far as I’m concerned are more common in spoken English.
• As far as I’m concerned can mean, ‘this is my opinion and I don’t care what others think’.

C. Giving the opinion of others
According to one of the journalists on television (= in the opinion of this journalist), the Prime Minister knew nothing about it.
The newspapers say that the Prime Minister knew weeks ago. (Note: we still use the verb say when referring to a written opinion)

D. Agreeing with someone
We often agree by continuing with the same opinion or adding to it.
A: I think we should concentrate on this one project.
B: Yes, it’s better to do one thing well than two things badly.
But if we want to make it clear we agree, we can use these expressions:
Yes, I agree (with you). (Note: agree is a verb in English. [NOT I am agree])
Yes, I think you’re right.

E. Disagreeing with someone
It is very common in English to begin with a short expression of agreement, and then give a different opinion. Here are some expressions used to introduce the disagreement:

Perhaps, maybe, possibly | but don’t you think ...
Yes, that’s true. | but I’m not sure that ...
You could be right. | but don’t forget ...

If you disagree strongly with someone you can say: I’m afraid I totally disagree (with you).
Note: When we want to disagree but not completely, we can use these phrases:
Yes, I partly agree (with you), but ...
I agree to some extent / a certain extent, but ...
Exercises

25.1 Complete these sentences in at least three different ways to ask people their opinion.
1 .................................................. the proposed changes?
2 .................................................. the new building?
3 .................................................. the transport system?
4 .................................................. the new divorce law?
5 .................................................. the government’s decision to make parents responsible?

25.2 Fill the gaps with the correct word. (One word only.)
1 A: What did you think .................... it?
   B: Well, ...................... I didn’t like it.
2 ...................... to the radio, we won’t know the result until tomorrow morning.
3 I agreed with him to a certain ......................
4 As far as I’m ......................, we need to buy a new photocopier immediately.
5 I’m afraid I ...................... disagree with you.

25.3 Rewrite these sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. The meaning must stay the same.
1 In my opinion you can’t learn a language in three months.
2 I think the club needs to buy new players.
3 Yes, I think you’re right.
4 According to the newspaper, terrorists started the fire.
5 I agree with her to some extent.

25.4 Continue these short conversations. You can either agree with the point of view and add to the argument; or introduce a different point of view. If you introduce a different point of view, remember to start with a short expression of agreement first.
1 A: A lot of women are quite happy to stay at home and be housewives.
   B: .................................................. ............................................................
2 A: The state shouldn’t give money to people who don’t want to work.
   B: .................................................. ............................................................
3 A: People from developing countries need all the help we can give them.
   B: .................................................. ............................................................
4 A: We should think about legalising cannabis.
   B: .................................................. ............................................................
5 A: It can be very dangerous if people become too nationalistic.
   B: .................................................. ............................................................
Specific situations and special occasions

You will know many of these expressions but may not be sure exactly how they are used.

A  Greetings: ‘hello’

Hi/Hello. How are you? This is the normal greeting when you meet someone you know. (also: How’s it going? infml) The usual reply is: Fine thanks. And you? Or possibly, Not bad. How about you?

Good morning, good afternoon, good evening These expressions are used at different times of the day (most people say Good morning until lunchtime). British people do not usually say Good day, but Australians do.

How do you do? For formal situations when you meet someone for the first time. The reply can be the same (How do you do?) or Pleased/nice to meet you.

B  Farewells: ‘goodbye’

Nice to meet you. For formal situations, when you say goodbye to someone you have just met for the first time.

(Nice to have met you.)

Bye. See you later. If you plan to see someone you know later the same day.

Bye. See you soon. When you know you will see them again, but have no specific plans to meet them.

Goodnight When you say goodbye to someone late at night, or if you (or they) are going to bed.

A: Have a nice weekend.
B: Yes. Same to you. The statement and reply when you say goodbye to a colleague/friend at work, school or college on Friday afternoon.

C  Happy occasions and celebrations

Happy Birthday To someone on his/her birthday. You can also say Many Happy Returns, and write either expression in a birthday card.

Happy/Merry Christmas To someone just before or on Christmas Day. You also write this in a card.

Happy New Year To someone at the beginning of the year.

Congratulations To someone who has just done something, e.g. passed an exam or got a job. In many situations we can also say Well done.

D  Special conventions

Excuse me (a) To get someone’s attention (b) When you want to get past, e.g. in a crowded place (c) To tell others you are going to leave the room.

Sorry (a) To say sorry, e.g. you stand on someone’s foot. You could also say I beg your pardon in this situation. And (b) When you want someone to repeat what they said.

Cheers To express good wishes when you have a drink with other people. Informally it can also mean ‘goodbye’ (also cheerio) and ‘thank you’.

Good luck To wish someone well before a difficult situation, e.g. a job interview, an exam, a driving test, etc.

Bless you To someone when they sneeze. They can reply by saying Thank you.

Note: In English there is no special expression when people start eating. If you want to say something, you can use the French expression Bon appetit, but it is not common.
Exercises

26.1 What message could you say on the phone or write in a card to these people?
1 A friend. Next week is 25 December.
2 A friend who is 21 tomorrow.
3 A friend on January 1st or soon after.
4 A very good friend who has just passed some important exams.
5 A friend who is going to take his driving test in three days' time.
6 A friend you know you are going to meet in the next few days/weeks.

26.2 Complete the conversations in a suitable way.

This is Charles Dobson.

1

2

Thanks.

3

4


26.3 What could you say in these situations?
1 You are in a meeting. Someone enters the room and says you have an important telephone call. What do you say as you leave?
2 Someone says something to you but you didn’t hear all of it. What do you say?
3 You met a new business client for the first time fifteen minutes ago, and now you are leaving. What do you say?
4 You are in a crowded bus. It is your stop and you want to get off. What do you say to other passengers as you move past them?
5 You are staying with some English friends. What do you say to them when you leave the room in the evening to go to bed?
6 You are in the street. A woman walks past you and at the same time something falls out of her bag. She has her back to you. What do you say?
7 A friend tells you they have just won a competition.
8 Another friend is going for a job interview this afternoon.

26.4 Here are some more special expressions. When do we use them and do you have equivalent expressions in your own language?
hard luck say ‘cheese’ watch out I’ve no idea
Uncountable nouns

Uncountable nouns (e.g. information):
- don't have a plural form (informations);
- are used with a singular verb (the information are);
- cannot be used with the indefinite article 'a/an'. (I want an information)

These uncountable nouns are often countable in other languages. Look at them carefully.

He refused to give me more information about the hotel.
She gave me lots of advice about the best dictionary to buy.
We are going to sell all the furniture. (= tables, chairs, armchairs, desks, etc.)
My knowledge of German is very limited.
You need a lot of equipment for camping (e.g. tent, sleeping bag, things for cooking, etc.)
She is making good progress in her English. (= her English is improving / getting better)
We had fabulous weather in Italy.
The teacher gave us a lot of homework last night.
I never take much luggage (= bags and suitcases) when I go on holiday.

In dictionaries

Countable nouns are usually shown with a (C) after them; uncountable nouns have (U) after them; and some nouns can be countable with one meaning and uncountable in another.

book (C)  The books are on the table.
housework (U)  I did a lot of housework this morning.
hair (U)  My hair is getting very long and untidy. I need to get it cut.
hair (C)  There is a hair on my dinner plate.

Plural nouns

Plural nouns (e.g. trousers):
- only have a plural form and cannot be used with 'a/an' (a-trouser) trousers
- usually have a plural verb (the trousers are ...)
- some plural nouns can be made singular using a pair of, e.g. a pair of trousers/sunglasses

Other words which are usually plural include:
I bought a pair of jeans yesterday.
These shorts are too long.
I bought a new pair of pyjamas when I went into hospital.
The scissors are on the table.
When it's sunny I wear sunglasses for driving.
These stairs are dangerous.
You can weigh yourself on those scales over there.
The headphones on my new walkman are great.
Exercises

27.1 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.
1 I need some informations.
2 We had a lovely weather.
3 The furnitures are very old.
4 I'm looking for a new jeans.
5 Your hairs are getting very long.
6 Do you have a scissors?
7 We had a lot of homeworks yesterday.
8 Do you think she's making a progress with her English?
9 These trousers is too small.
10 She gave me some good advices.

27.2 Are these nouns countable, uncountable, or countable with one meaning and uncountable with another? Use a dictionary to help you. If they can be countable and uncountable, write sentence examples to show the difference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>butter</th>
<th>cup</th>
<th>housework</th>
<th>insurance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>spaghetti</td>
<td>coffee</td>
<td>grape</td>
<td>money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>television</td>
<td>coin</td>
<td>work</td>
<td>travel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27.3 Complete these dialogues using a suitable plural noun or uncountable noun from the opposite page. Make sure the form of each word is correct. Look at the example first.

Example: A: It's too hot for jeans.
          B: You need a pair of shorts.

1 A: I have to cut this paper into three pieces.
   B: You need ...........................................

2 A: I can't see because the sun is in my eyes.
   B: You need ...........................................

3 A: I don't know what to do when I leave school.
   B: You need ...........................................

4 A: My room looks so empty.
   B: You need ...........................................

5 A: I want to find out how much I weigh.
   B: You need ...........................................

6 A: I can't play my music loud because my mother always complains.
   B: You need ...........................................

7 A: I'm starting to feel cold in bed.
   B: You need ...........................................

8 A: My teacher said my English wasn't getting any better.
   B: You need ...........................................

27.4 Read this text from a radio broadcast. Can you find two more uncountable nouns and two more plural nouns? (These words are not included on the opposite page.)

Traffic has been bad throughout the day because of roadworks on the A40 at Uxbridge which are causing long delays for motorists heading into London. The authorities are advising drivers to avoid the area if at all possible, and we will, of course, keep you informed of the situation with the latest news every half hour, so don’t go away.
AVerb + -ing form

Some verbs are followed by an -ing form if the next word is a verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>enjoying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td>finishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imagine</td>
<td>imagining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(don’t) mind</td>
<td>can’t stand (= hate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel like</td>
<td>(= want/desire infml)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(don’t) like</td>
<td>can’t stand (= hate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give up</td>
<td>giving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avoid</td>
<td>avoiding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admit</td>
<td>admitting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny</td>
<td>denying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Avoid (If you avoid something, you keep away from it; if you avoid someone, you stay away from them. You do these things by intention.)
Admit (If you admit something, you agree it is true, and usually it is something bad.)
Deny (= the opposite of admit; in other words, you say something isn’t true)

Look at these sentences to help you with the meaning of the more difficult verbs.

I stayed in last night but I feel like going out this evening.
At the police station, he admitted stealing the woman’s money but denied hitting her.
Cigarettes are very expensive, so he’s decided to give up smoking.
I’ve lived in New Zealand all my life; I can’t imagine living anywhere else.
Some people can’t stand working at the weekend but I don’t mind. (= it’s not a problem)
I always try to avoid driving through the city centre during the rush hour.

BVerb + infinitive

Some verbs are followed by an infinitive if the next word is a verb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>offer</td>
<td>offering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>want</td>
<td>wanting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seem</td>
<td>seeming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decide</td>
<td>deciding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope</td>
<td>hoping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgetting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>expecting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manage</td>
<td>managing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refuse</td>
<td>refusing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promise</td>
<td>promising</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Look at these sentences to help you with the meaning of some of the verbs.

We were very busy but we managed to finish before 6 p.m.
It was getting late and there were no buses so I offered to take them home in my car.
He hit one of the boys but he didn’t mean to do it; I meant to go but I forgot.
I asked her to carry the suitcases but she refused to help.
I don’t expect to see them before next week.
They promised to phone as soon as they arrive.

CVerb + infinitive without ‘to’

There are two common verbs followed by an object + infinitive without ‘to’. They are:

Make someone do something, and let someone do something.

My parents make me do my homework every night. (= they force me to do my homework)
My parents let me go out after I’ve done my homework. (= they allow/permit me to go out)

DVerb + -ing form or infinitive

Some verbs can be followed by an -ing form or infinitive, but the meaning is very similar, e.g. love, like, hate, and prefer. But with some verbs there is a difference in meaning:

I remembered to buy a present for my brother. (= I didn’t forget to buy a present)
I remember buying her a present. (= it’s in my memory; it happened and I remember)
Exercises

28.1 Cross out the incorrect answers.
1 We decided to work / working during our holiday.
2 She promised to help / helping us.
3 I don’t feel like to go / going for a walk at the moment.
4 He forgot to take / taking the cake out of the oven.
5 Do you really hate to drive / driving when it’s wet?
6 I can’t imagine to eat / eating pasta every day of the week.
7 Most of the time she prefers to work / working on her own.
8 I don’t remember to go / going to the zoo when we stayed in Madrid.
9 He hopes to finish / finishing his thesis by the end of the month.
10 I don’t mind to help / helping you if I’m not busy.

28.2 Complete part c) of each number in a suitable way.

1 Most people want:
   a) to be rich  b) to get married  c) ...........................................................

2 A lot of people can’t stand:
   a) getting wet  b) getting up early  c) ...........................................................

3 Most people enjoy:
   a) going to parties  b) lying on a beach  c) ...........................................................

4 On hot days most people don’t feel like:
   a) working  b) eating big meals  c) ...........................................................

5 Most people expect
   a) to be happy  b) to find a job they will like  c) ...........................................................

6 A lot of people don’t mind:
   a) washing-up  b) ironing  c) ...........................................................

7 Some parents make their teenage children:
   a) wear certain clothes  b) do housework  c) ...........................................................

8 Other parents let their teenage children:
   a) wear what they like  b) stay out all night  c) ...........................................................

Now think about each of the above statements. Are they true, and are they (or were they) true of you? If possible, compare and discuss your answers with someone else.

28.3 Read the story and answer the questions below.

When Julie was 17, her father said she could go on holiday with two school friends. He also said that he would lend her the money for a hotel, but she must pay for the air fare and her entertainment. Julie was delighted and said she would bring him back a wonderful present and pay him back in six months. But first they had to decide where to go. They looked at lots of brochures and finally agreed on a two-week holiday in the south of France. They had a great time, but unfortunately Julie spent all her money and forgot to buy a present for her father.

1 What did Julie’s father let her do when she was 17? He let ...........................................................
2 And what did he offer to do? He offered ...........................................................
3 But what did he refuse to do? He refused ...........................................................
4 In return what did Julie promise? She promised ...........................................................
5 What did the three girls decide? They decided  ...........................................................
Verb patterns

Verb + object

subject verb object
She proposed (= suggested /ml) the plan at the meeting.
The travel agent confirmed (= said it was sure) my reservation.
They discussed (= talked about) the film for hours.

Verb + object + question word

subject verb object question word
I told them where to find it.
She asked us why we wanted it.
He showed everyone what to do.

Note: A common mistake is: ‘He explained me what to do.’ After explain + question word, there is no direct object. We say: ‘He explained what to do / what I had to do.’

Verb + object + infinitive

subject verb object infinitive
She asked everyone to leave.
They told us to wait outside.
The doctor advised him to stay in bed.
I wanted the others to help us.
He persuaded me to go to the party.
She warned them to be careful.

persuade = make somebody change their mind.
warn = tell someone of a possible danger, and often tell them what they should(n’t) do.
She warned the children not to swim near the rocks.

Verb + (object) + (that) clause

subject verb object (that) clause
He said – (that) it was good.
She suggested – (that) we go together.
He insisted – (that) we work until 5 p.m.
They told him (that) it was expensive.
She warned me (that) it was dangerous.

insist = demand something strongly and not accept refusal.
She insisted that I stay with them (= she did not want me to stay in another place).
We can also use -ing after suggest, e.g. She suggested going there together.

Verb + (object) + preposition

He insisted on paying for the hotel. (Note: use the -ing form of the verb after a preposition)
They blamed the driver for the accident. (= they said he was responsible / it was his fault)
He complained (to the manager) about the bad service. (= he said he was not satisfied)
The manager apologised (to the customer) for the bad service. (= the manager said sorry)
Exercises

29.1 Correct the mistakes in these sentences. (Most are the result of translating from the first language.)

1. She said me the film was terrible.
2. He told it's not possible.
3. Can you explain me what to do?
4. She suggested us to go to an Italian restaurant.
5. Can we discuss about my report?
6. I want that he leaves.
7. I need to confirm me the booking.
8. I apologised my mistake.
9. She advised me buy a dictionary.
10. She insisted to pay.

29.2 What is the missing verb in each of these sentences? (There may be more than one answer.)

1. I didn’t understand how the photocopier worked but she kindly .................................................. me.
2. She wasn’t satisfied with her course, so she went to see the Principal to ...........................................
3. It was a terrible thing to say to him, but she refused to .................................................................
4. He knew it was dangerous but he didn’t ................................................................. me.
5. I didn’t want to go at first but she ................................................................. me.
6. She advised them to stay here but they ................................................................. on going.
7. I booked the room by phone but they asked me to ................................................................. it in writing.
8. I don’t think it was my fault but they still ................................................................. me.
9. She didn’t know the way but I ................................................................. how to get there.
10. They watched the film together and then they ................................................................. it in small groups.

29.3 Complete these sentences in a logical way.

1. Some of us were getting hungry so I suggested .................................................................
2. They were making a lot of noise next door and I told .................................................................
3. She went to that new Italian restaurant and said .................................................................
4. We read the book for homework and discussed .................................................................
5. The streets are quite dangerous at night so I insisted .................................................................
6. It was only a few minutes to the beach, but I still couldn’t persuade .................................................................
7. She wasn’t feeling very well and the teacher advised .................................................................
8. The whole team played badly but most of the newspapers have blamed .................................................................

9. The water there can make you ill and I warned .................................................................
10. If you don’t understand the instructions, someone will explain .................................................................

29.4 When you learn new verbs, you may need to know the constructions that are used with them. So, look at the grammar information about a word in a good dictionary, and always look carefully at the example sentences, then write one or two of your own. Do it for these three examples. What patterns from the opposite page are used after these verbs?

order recommend prevent
Adjectives

A 'Scale' and 'limit' adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scale</th>
<th>Limit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>huge/enormous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tired</td>
<td>exhausted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>fascinating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprised</td>
<td>astonished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(absolutely) terrible</td>
<td>(very) bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>awful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dreadful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We can use very before 'scale' adjectives e.g. very good, very bad; we can use absolutely before 'limit' adjectives e.g. absolutely awful, absolutely great. (You cannot say 'very wonderful'; you cannot say 'absolutely good'.) Here are some more examples.

- Scale: hot - boiling, cold - freezing, crowded (= full of people) - packed, frightened (= afraid of sth.) - terrified
- Limit: hungry - starving (infml)

B Adjectives ending -ing and -ed

There is a large group of adjectives which can have an -ing or -ed ending. The -ing ending is used on adjectives which describe a person or thing or situation; the -ed ending is on adjectives which describe the effect this person, thing or situation has on us.

It was such a boring party; I was bored, and so was everyone else.
I didn’t think the film was very frightening, but my younger brother was frightened by it.
I think the students are depressed largely because the weather is so depressing.

Other examples of common adjectives ending -ing and -ed include:

- surprising/surprised - exciting/excited
- exhausting/exhausted - terrifying/terrified
- confusing/confused - tiring/tired
- frightening/frightened - fascinating/fascinated
- astonishing/astonished - embarrassing/embarrassed
- interesting/interested - disappointing/disappointed

Look at these examples to help you with the meaning of some of these words.

John wasn’t very good at maths, so I was very surprised when he passed the exam. And I was astonished when I discovered that he’d got 98%.

In London there are lots of streets with the same name and it’s very confusing if you are a tourist. Another problem is that it’s a huge place. We walked everywhere on our last trip and we were exhausted at the end of each day. But it’s an exciting city, with so much to do.

It’s been a terrible week for Greg. He was very disappointed last Saturday because he played badly in an important match. Then on Monday, his girlfriend left him for someone else, so he’s very depressed at the moment.

One of our teachers can never remember our names. It seemed funny at first, but now it’s getting a bit embarrassing.
Exercises

30.1 Write at least one limit adjective for these scale adjectives. Cover the opposite page before you begin.

big ........................................  hot ........................................
small ........................................  cold ........................................
tired ........................................  bad ........................................
surprised .....................................  hungry .....................................
ingesting .....................................  frightened  ..................................

30.2 Rewrite this postcard using limit adjectives where possible to give a more positive and/or more extreme effect.

Arrived on Sunday. The hotel is good - we've got a big room and the food is nice. It's been hot every day so far, so we've spent most of the time on the beach, along with everyone else - it's very crowded. But the sea is actually cold - that's because it's the Atlantic coast, I suppose.

Tomorrow we're going to walk to a small seaside village about ten kilometres from here - I imagine I'll be really tired by the time we get back, but it does sound an interesting place and I'm looking forward to it.

I'll write again in a couple of days and tell you about it.

Until then, love, Benita

30.3 Complete these dialogues using the correct limit adjective in the correct form (-ing or -ed).

1 A: Was it very tiring?
   B: Yes we were absolutely ........................................

2 A: I was very interested in her talk.
   B: Yes it was absolutely ........................................

3 A: Maria said it was a frightening film.
   B: Yes it was absolutely ........................................

4 A: It was a surprising decision, wasn’t it?
   B: Yes I was absolutely ........................................

5 A: Was it very cold?
   B: Oh yes, it was ........................................

30.4 Can you think of an adjective from the opposite page to describe how the people felt in each of these situations?

1 They walked about ten miles in the morning, then spent the afternoon helping some friends to cut down some trees.

2 From the description in the travel brochure, they expected a beautiful big villa by the sea. In actual fact it was quite small, not very nice, and miles from the beach.

3 They decided to wear jeans to the party but when they arrived everyone else was wearing formal evening dress.

4 One person told them the street was on the left, another told them to turn right, and a third person said they had to go back to the station.

5 When they got home there was a new car outside their house. They went inside and there was a new sofa in the lounge and a new dining table in the dining room.
Prepositions: place

A

At, On, In

Learn these rules.

at a point/place  
and on a surface  
in an area or space

e.g. I met her at the bus stop. She lives at 43 Duke Road.

He’s at work (i.e., not at home). They’re at a party tonight.

e.g. The book is on the desk. We sat on the floor.

They’re at a party tonight,

e.g. Malawi is a country in Africa. She lives in Milan. He’s in

the kitchen. The key’s in my pocket. Put it in the box.

B

Opposites

Some prepositions form pairs of opposites.

up  ↓  down  ↓  into  →  out of  →  behind

over/above  
under/below

Note: Over/above are often synonymous, so are under/below, but over and under

sometimes suggest movement.

When we flew over Paris we couldn’t see much because we were above the clouds.

Below us was the river which ran under the bridge.

C

Here are some more common prepositions of place

We drove along the river,

round the lake, past the old castle, and through the village.

We came over the bridge,

and parked next to the house, which was opposite the hotel.

Our house is between two shops and it is near a bus stop; you just go across the road and walk along the other side towards the church.
Exercises

31.1 Fill the gaps with at, on or in.
1 I put the books .......... the table.
2 The butter is .......... the fridge.
3 We saw them .......... the bus stop.
4 I met her .......... a party.
5 She works .......... Barcelona.
6 The dictionary is .......... my desk.
7 I sat .......... the bed and wrote the letter.
8 I left my books .......... school.
9 There was still a lot of snow .......... the ground when I arrived.
10 He lives .......... a very nice area.

31.2 Answer the questions using the opposite preposition.
1 Was he standing in front of the picture?
   No, ..........................................................
2 Is it up the hill to his house?
   No, ..........................................................
3 Did you climb over the fence?
   No, ..........................................................
4 Did you see her get into the car?
   No, ..........................................................
5 Did you fly below the clouds?
   No, ..........................................................
6 Does she live in the flat above you?
   No, ..........................................................

31.3 Look at the map and complete the description of the route you took on the first day.

We took the boat .......... the channel, then we drove .......... France and .......... Switzerland, where we spent the first night .......... a small town quite .......... Lucerne.
Now look at the diagram and complete the description of the second day.

The next morning we walked .......... a river which ran .......... two mountains. We had lunch .......... a small restaurant and then walked .......... the lake and .......... the small town of Stans, before going back.
Adverbs: frequency and degree

A
Frequency (= how often)

always frequently regularly quite often sometimes occasionally seldom (fml.) hardly ever never rarely

Note:
- Adverbs of frequency go before the main verb with the exception of the verb ‘to be’:
  I occasionally see them. They hardly ever go to the cinema now.
  She is often late these days. I’ve never tried Korean food.
- Sometimes, occasionally and often can go at the beginning or end of the sentence:
  They go to the zoo quite often. I play tennis occasionally.
  Sometimes my parents give me money. Occasionally I work at the weekend.

B
Degree (= how much)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>OK</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>extremely</td>
<td>very</td>
<td>rather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fairly</td>
<td>slightly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incredibly</td>
<td>pretty</td>
<td>quite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>quite</td>
<td>extremely</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:
- Rather is more formal than the other words and often describes a negative situation:
  We had rather bad weather. The food was rather expensive.
- For a positive situation, rather often indicates that something is better than we expected:
  Her cooking is rather good actually. (I didn’t expect that, so it was a very nice surprise.
- Incredibly, pretty and a bit are informal and mostly used in spoken English; a bit is mostly used before negative adjectives (not positive ones) or adjectives with a negative prefix.
  The food was pretty good. (= nearly ‘very’ good) That Ferrari is incredibly expensive.
  The hotel was a bit disappointing, actually. I thought she looked a bit unhappy.

C
Almost/nearly

It’s almost/nearly five o’clock. (= it is probably about 4.57)
I almost/nearly lost the match. (= I won but only just; only by a small amount)

Note: almost the same NOT quite the same

D
Hardly

Hardly + a positive often has the same meaning as almost + a negative:
I hardly had anything to eat for lunch. (= I had almost nothing)
She could hardly walk after her operation. (= she almost couldn’t walk)

Note: In the above sentences you can also use barely with the same meaning.
Exercises

32.1 Organise these mixed up words into correct sentences.
1 brother often us Sunday visits on my
2 me ever phones she hardly
3 have leg my broken never I
4 visit saw I hardly his him during
5 get occasionally I early up
6 always she Monday on early is work for a

32.2 Replace the underlined adverb with a different adverb that has the same meaning.
1 She seldom goes to conferences now.
2 I can barely remember the first house we lived in.
3 There were almost fifty people there, you know.
4 I thought it was a bit disappointing, didn't you?
5 I'm afraid I'm extremely busy next week.

32.3 Respond to these sentences using 'rather' to show surprise. (You can also add 'actually' at the end of the sentence.)
1 A: Was it a boring evening?
   B: No, it ..............................................................
2 A: Were the children very noisy?
   B: No, they ..............................................................
3 A: I've heard it's a very dirty town. Is that true?
   B: No, it ..............................................................
4 A: Was the weather awful?
   B: No, it ..............................................................

32.4 Change the underlined adverbs to make the first two sentences slightly more positive, and the last three sentences slightly less negative.
1 I thought they were very good.
2 He’s been getting quite good marks in his exams.
3 John said the flat was very small.
4 They said it was fairly boring.
5 The clothes were very expensive.

32.5 Put a frequency adverb into each of these sentences to make a true sentence about yourself. Make sure you put the adverb in the correct place. Compare your answers with someone else if possible.
1 I buy clothes I don't like.
2 I clean my shoes.
3 I remember my dreams.
4 I give money to people in the street if they ask me for money.
5 I speak to strangers on buses and trains.
6 I’m rude to people who are rude to me.

Now think about each of your answers to the above sentences. Do you think they are:
a) very typical? b) fairly typical? c) slightly unusual? d) extremely unusual?
If you compared your answers with someone else, how would you describe their answers?
Time and sequence

**A When and as soon as**

I'll phone my uncle when I get home. / As soon as I get home I'll phone my uncle.  
When you've finished you can go home. / You can go home as soon as you've finished.  

*Note:* The meaning is the same, but *as soon as* suggests it is more immediate. Note also that both items can be followed by the present tense or the present perfect (but not *will*).

**B Two things happening at the same time**

Pat wrote some letters while I cooked the dinner. (two actions in the same period of time)  
The accident happened while I was on my way to work. (Here there is a longer action ‘on my way to work’ and a shorter action ‘the accident’. We can also use *when* or *as* here.)  
I saw him (just) as I came out of the office. (For two very short actions we use *as* (not *while*), and we often use *just as* to emphasise that these two short actions happened at exactly the same moment: He opened the door just as I touched the handle.)

**C One thing after another**

We met the others in the cafe, and then we went to the match.  
I finished my homework, after that I played a couple of computer games.  
After my visit to New York, I decided to have a rest.  
We had something to eat before we went out.  

*Note:* We can also follow before and after with an -ing form:  
After visiting New York, I ... We had something to eat before going out.

**D A sequence of actions**

We had a great holiday. First of all we spent a few days in St. Moritz. Then / After that we drove down to the Italian Riviera and stayed in Portofino for a week. Finally, we went back to Switzerland and visited some old friends in Lucerne.  

*Note:*  
• If one action happens soon after the other, we often use *afterwards* in place of *after (that):* First of all we met the others for a meal, and afterwards we went to the disco.  
• If you want to say that something happened after a lot of time and/or a lot of problems, you can use *eventually* or *in the end.*  

We took several wrong turnings and the traffic was awful, but eventually we got there.

**E A sequence of reasons**

There are different combinations of words and phrases we can use here:  

**SON:** Why can't we go away this weekend?  
**DAD:** First(ly) because I'm busy this weekend. Second(ly) you've got a lot of school work to do. And third(ly) we're planning to go away next weekend.  

*Note:*  
• We can also start with the phrases *to begin with* / *to start with.*  
• In spoken English we can start with *for one thing,* followed by and *for another* (thing).  
• For the second or final reason, we sometimes use *(and) besides* or *anyway* *(infml):*  

We can't go to that club because it's too far. And *besides,* I'm not a member.
Exercises

33.1 Cross out the incorrect answers. Sometimes both answers are correct.
1 I'll give them your message as soon as I get / will get there.
2 Maria cleaned the kitchen as/while I did the bathroom.
3 We must go to that gallery before leave/leaving.
4 I had a lot of problems at the shop but eventually/finally they agreed to give me a refund.
5 The phone rang while / just as I was leaving the house.
6 The letter arrived while/as we were getting ready.

33.2 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.
1 We had a game of squash and afterwards ......................................................
2 I'll meet you as soon as .................................................................
3 I must remember to lock the back door before ..............................................
4 I think I dropped the letter as .................................................................
5 I looked up half of the words in my dictionary while ....................................
6 We had to wait for hours but eventually .....................................................
7 My car is too big for you to drive. And besides, ........................................
8 I saw him break the window just as ..........................................................

33.3 Add a final sentence (starting with a suitable link word or phrase) to each of these texts.
1 A: Why do you want to stay in this evening when we could go to Karl's party?
   B: Well, for one thing because my ex-boyfriend will be there and I really don't want to see him. .................................................................
2 A: What did you do?
   B: First of all we spent a few days in Paris. After that we took the train down to Marseilles and stayed with friends.
3 A: Why can't we send one of our staff to the conference?
   B: Well, to start with, I don't think that the company should send anyone to the conference. And .................................................................

33.4 You spent a week at a hotel and had these problems:
- There was very little variety in the food.
- The service was very slow.
- When you mentioned this to the staff, they were very rude.

The manager was on holiday during your stay, so you have decided to send a letter of complaint. Write the next part of this letter and then look at the model answer for the whole letter in the answer key.

Dear Sir/Madam

I have just returned from a weekend break at The Royal Malvern Hotel, and I am writing to express my dissatisfaction with the food and service provided in your restaurant.
In addition, moreover, etc. (X and Y)

When you add a second piece of information in a sentence to support the first piece of information, you often use and, e.g. The food is excellent and very good value. When you put this information in two sentences, these link words and phrases are common:

The food is usually very good. Furthermore, it is one of the cheapest restaurants in town. The set menu is £10, which is excellent value. In addition, you get a free glass of wine. The food is excellent in that restaurant. It's very good value as well (or too). You get very good food in that place. What's more, it's excellent value.

Note: The first two examples are more formal and more common in written English. The last two examples are more common in spoken English.

Although, in spite of, etc. (X but Y)

When you want to contrast two pieces of information in a single sentence and say that the second fact is surprising after the first, you can use these link words:

She still won the game although / though / even though she had a bad knee. They still went for a walk in spite of the fact that it was pouring with rain. The service is worse despite the fact that they have more staff.

Note:
In these examples you can also begin the sentence with the link word: Although she had a bad knee, she still won the game. It is very common to use still in these sentences to emphasise the surprise (as in examples). In the last two example sentences you can use a noun or -ing form: They went for a walk in spite of the rain. The service is worse despite having more staff. After although, you can only have a noun/pronoun + verb (i.e. although she had a bad knee / her knee was bad).

Whereas

This word is used to connect a fact or opinion about a person, place or thing, with something different about another person, place or thing (you can also use whilst). In other words, the second fact is a contrast with the first, but not always a surprise (as in B above). John is very careful whereas Christopher makes lots of mistakes. The south is hot and dry whereas the north gets quite a lot of rain.

However

You can use however to contrast two ideas in two sentences, and say that the second sentence is surprising after the first (as in B); and you can use however or on the other hand to make a contrast between different people/places or things (as in C above):

I don’t agree with a lot of his methods. However, he is a good teacher. We didn’t like the hotel at all. However, we still enjoyed ourselves. Marcel thought it was a great film. Joe, however / on the other hand, thought it was stupid. Most big cats, such as tigers and leopards, are very solitary creatures. Lions, however / on the other hand, spend much of their time in groups.
Exercises

34.1 Cross out the incorrect answers. Both answers may be correct.
1 Although / in spite of we left late, we still got there in time.
2 It was a fantastic evening although / in spite of the terrible food.
3 We have decided to go in spite of / despite the cost of the tickets.
4 They enjoyed the course even though / whereas it was very difficult.
5 I love the sea furthermore / whereas most of my friends prefer the mountains.
6 We found a lovely villa near the lake that we can rent. In addition / Moreover it has its own swimming pool, and we have free use of a car provided by the owners.
7 We both told John the car was too expensive. However / On the other hand, he still decided to buy it.
8 Most people we met tried to help us. They were very friendly too / as well.
9 During the week the town centre is very busy. At the weekend on the other hand / whereas, it is very quiet and almost empty.
10 My uncle is the owner of the factory opposite. He also / however runs the restaurant next door and the car hire company down the road.

34.2 Combine parts from each column to form five short texts.

A
- He went to school today
- He always did his best at school
- He’s got the right qualifications.
- He didn’t pass the exam
- He decided to take the job.

B
- even though
- in spite of
- However
- whereas
- What’s more

C
- the pay isn’t very good.
- he’s the most experienced.
- the help I gave him.
- he didn’t feel very well.
- most of his schoolfriends were very lazy.

34.3 Fill the gaps with a suitable link word or phrase.
1 ........................................ taking a map, they still got lost.
2 It took me two hours to do it ........................................ the others finished in less than an hour.
3 The hotel has a very good reputation. ........................................, it is one of the cheapest in the area.
4 She managed to get there ........................................ she had a broken ankle.
5 It’s not the best dictionary you can buy; ........................................, it’s better than nothing.
6 She’s younger than the others in the group, and she’s better than most of them ..........................

34.4 Complete these sentences in a logical way.
1 I was able to follow what she was saying even though ........................................
2 I was able to follow what she was saying whereas ........................................
3 We enjoyed the holiday in spite of ........................................
4 If you buy a season ticket, you can go as often as you like. Furthermore, ........................................
5 The exam was very difficult. However, ........................................
6 Although it was a very long film, ........................................

34.5 Answer the questions and test yourself on these different link words and phrases.
1 Write down all the link words and phrases from the opposite page that you can remember.
2 Organise them into groups according to their meaning.
3 Write your own examples for each one and keep them on one page in your notebook. In future, you can add more examples as you meet them.
Similarities, differences and conditions

A Similarities

These are ways of saying that two or more things are similar, or have something the same.

Peter is similar to (= like) his brother in many ways. Peter and his brother are very similar. Peter and his brother are quite alike.

Maria and Rebecca both passed their exams. (= Maria passed and Rebecca passed)

But neither wants to go to university. (= Maria doesn’t want to go and Rebecca doesn’t want to go either)

The two boys have a lot in common. (= they have many things e.g. hobbies, interests, beliefs, that are the same or very similar) See also section B.

B Differences

These are ways of saying that two or more things are different.

His early films are different from his later ones.

Paula is quite unlike (= very different from) her sister.

They have nothing in common. (= they have no interests or beliefs that are the same)

C Using ‘compare’

We want to compare the prices of all the televisions before we decide which one to buy.

They made a comparison of average salaries in different parts of the country.

Our new flat is very big compared with/to our old one. (= if you compare it with the other)

If you compare this one with the others, I’m sure you’ll see a difference.

D Exceptions

When we make a general statement about things or people and then say that one thing or person is not included or is different from the others, we use these words and phrases:

It snowed everywhere except on the west coast.

The two girls are very similar except that Louise has slightly longer hair.

The museum is open every day except (for) / apart from Sunday(s).

Everyone heard the fire alarm except (for) / apart from the two boys in room 7.

Note: Except can be followed by different words (nouns, prepositions, etc.), but except for and apart from are followed by nouns or noun phrases.

E Conditions

Here are some words/phrases which introduce or connect conditions. Like ‘if’, they are used with certain tenses, and the rules are quite difficult. For the moment, notice the tenses underlined in the examples, and use them in this way until you meet other examples.

We will be late unless we hurry. (= we’ll be late if we don’t hurry)

Unless the weather improves (= if the weather doesn’t improve), we won’t be able to go.

I must go now otherwise (= because if I don’t) I’ll miss the last bus.

You can borrow it as long as (= on condition that) you bring it back by Thursday.

Note: The meaning is very similar to if here, but the use of as long as shows that the condition is very important to the speaker.

Take your umbrella with you in case it rains. (= because of the possibility it may rain later)

I brought food in case we get hungry. (= because of the possibility we may be hungry later)
Exercises

35.1 Read the information, then complete the sentences using the words/phrases from A and B.

MICHEL ... is 21 and lives with his parents. He has worked in a shop. He is shy, hard-working and very good at sport. He would like to become the manager of a sports shop.

PHILIPPE ... is 22 and lives alone. He is at university. He is clever but lazy, and spends most of his time at parties. He has no plans for the future.

PAUL ... is 18 and lives with his parents. He is a trainee in a bank, but one day would like to be the manager. He is a very good footballer.

1 Michel and Paul are very ________________________.
2 Philippe is quite ________________________ the other two.
3 Paul and Michel have ________________________.
4 Paul and Philippe have almost nothing ________________________.
5 Paul and Michel both ________________________.
6 Neither of them ________________________.

35.2 Rewrite these sentences. You must start with the words you are given and use the words in brackets. The meaning must stay the same. Look at the example first.

Example: He’s like the others.
He’s very similar to the others.... (similar)

1 Martin is quite unlike his brother.
   Martin is very ________________________ (different)
2 When you see the houses, you realise that the flats are very good value.
   The flats are very good value ________________________ (compare)
3 In her class, Carla was the only one who didn’t pass the exam.
   Everyone ________________________ (except)
4 The two boys have completely different interests.
   The two boys have ________________________ (common)
5 You don’t have to wear a tie except for Saturday(s).
   You don’t have to wear a tie ________________________ (apart)

35.3 Fill the gaps with the correct link word or phrase from E opposite.

1 You must write these words down .................. you may forget them.
2 I’ve made extra food for the party .................. more people come than we expect.
3 I can meet you for dinner on Friday evening .................. I have to work late at the office.
4 We agreed to buy my daughter a dog .................. she takes it for a walk every day.

35.4 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.

1 I want to finish this report today otherwise I’ll ________________________.
2 You can’t get in that disco unless you ________________________.
3 You can borrow the money as long as you ________________________.
4 I’ve cleaned the spare room and made the bed in case ________________________.
5 I’m not going to work on Saturday unless ________________________.
6 I’m going to take my cheque book with me in case ________________________.

35.5 How many different sentences can you write beginning with these words?

Compared with Britain, my country ________________________.
36 Reason, purpose and result

A Reason

I went home early because/as/since I was feeling a bit tired.

Note: With as or since, the reason (in this example ‘feeling tired’) is often known to the listener or reader, so it is less important. It is also common to put as/since at the beginning of the sentence: ‘As/since I was feeling tired, I went home early’. In spoken English, many native speakers would use so after the reason: I was feeling a bit tired, so I went home early.

We can also use because of, but with a different construction. Compare:

We always go there because the weather is absolutely wonderful. (because + noun + verb)
We always go there because of the wonderful weather. (because of + (adjective) + noun)

Due to and owing to have the same meaning as because of, but they are more formal, and are often used in sentences which explain the reason for a problem:

The plane was late due to bad weather. (due to is often used after the verb ‘to be’) De to / Owing to the power cut last night, I missed the late film on TV.

B ‘Cause’ and ‘result’ verbs

There are some verbs which we can use in similar ways to the words above:

Police think the bus caused the accident. (= was responsible for the accident)
The extra investment should lead to more jobs. (= result in more jobs)

‘Cause’ and ‘result’ verbs sometimes appear together in this way:

Police think that a cigarette caused the fire which resulted in the destruction of the building.

C Purpose

A ‘purpose’ is an intention, an aim or a reason for doing something:

The purpose of buying this book was to improve my English.

But we often introduce a purpose using so (that):

I bought this book so (that) I can improve my English.
They went home early so (that) they could watch the match on television.
We moved house so (that) we could send our children to this school.

Note: In spoken English, people often just say so (without that). It is also very common (as in the examples) to use a modal verb, e.g. can or could, after so that.

D Result

These words introduce a result:

I left the ticket at home, so I’m afraid I had to buy another one.
I forgot to send the letters. Consequently, some people didn’t know about the meeting.
She was extremely hard-working and therefore deserved the promotion.
Both the manager and his assistant were ill. As a result, there was no-one to take decisions.

Note: So is the most common, and usually links ideas in a single sentence. As a result and consequently are more formal, and usually connect ideas in two separate sentences (as in the examples). Therefore (also more formal), can be used in a single sentence (as in the example), but may also connect two sentences.
Exercises

36.1 Combine the two sentences into one sentence using *so*, *so that*, *because*, *as*, or *since*. More than one answer is possible in some sentences.

1. I didn’t phone you. It was very late.
2. I turned up the radio in the lounge. I could hear it in the kitchen.
3. The restaurant was full. We went to the bar next door.
4. I stayed at home. I was expecting a phone call.
5. It’s a very large city. You have to use public transport a lot.
6. I learned to drive. My mother didn’t have to take me to the riding school every week.

36.2 Transform these sentences using *because of*. Make any changes that are necessary.

Example: He couldn’t play because he had an injured shoulder.

He couldn’t play because of his injured shoulder.

1. She got the job because her qualifications are excellent.
2. The weather was terrible, so we couldn’t eat outside.
3. She had to stay at home because she has a broken ankle.
4. The light was very bad, so the referee had to stop the game.
5. The flowers died because it was so dry.
6. The traffic was very heavy. I was half an hour late.

36.3 Read this memo from a manager to the staff. Fill the gaps with suitable words or phrases.

To: All staff
From: The Manager
Date: 9.8.96
Subject: Temporary roadworks

From next Monday (and continuing throughout the week), there will be roadworks on all major approach roads to the factory. (1) ______ this will (2) ______ considerable delays, could I please ask staff to leave home a few minutes early in the morning (3) ______ everyone arrives on time.

I have been told that these roadworks could also (4) ______ severe traffic congestion. (5) ______ it may be advisable to leave your cars at home and use public transport instead.

Thank you for your cooperation in this matter.

DP

36.4 These sentences are all about learning English. Complete them in a logical way.

1. I want to improve my English because ________________________________
2. I bought myself a walkman so that I ________________________________
3. I study English at the weekend as ________________________________
4. I always write words down in my notebook so that ________________________________
5. I don’t get many opportunities to practise my English. Consequently, ________________________________
6. My brother has got a number of American friends. As a result, ________________________________
7. If he could speak almost perfect English it could lead to ________________________________
8. Some people find English difficult because of ________________________________
The physical world

A Physical features

- continents: e.g. Asia, Europe
- countries: e.g. China, Brazil
- islands: e.g. Sicily, Corsica, Hong Kong
- group of islands: e.g. The Bahamas, The Balearics
- oceans: e.g. The Atlantic Ocean, The Pacific Ocean
- seas: e.g. The Red Sea, The Dead Sea
- lakes: e.g. Lake Tanganyika, Lake Titikaka
- rivers: e.g. The Nile, The Mississippi
- falls: e.g. Niagara Falls, The Iguacu Falls
- mountains: e.g. Mount Everest, Mount Fuji
- mountain ranges: e.g. The Andes, The Alps
- jungles: e.g. The Amazon (also called The Amazon rainforest)
- forests: e.g. The Black Forest
- deserts: e.g. The Sahara, The Gobi

Note: Sometimes you need the definite article 'the', e.g. The Atlantic Ocean, The Alps; sometimes no article is used, e.g. Mount Everest and Lake Titikaka. Compare this with your own language.

B Natural disasters

A disaster is when something terrible happens, which often results in death, destruction and suffering.

- volcanic eruption
- flood
- hurricane
- drought
- earthquake
Exercises

37.1 Complete these sentences, as in the example.

Example: The Nile is a river.
1 The Atlantic is __________________________.
2 The Alps are ____________________________.
3 Greece is ________________________________.
4 The Sahara is ____________________________.
5 The Amazon is ____________________________.
6 The Mediterranean is _____________________.
7 The Bahamas is __________________________.
8 Africa is ________________________________.
9 Crete and Corsica are ____________________.
10 Everest is the highest ____________________ in the world.
11 Michigan and Eyrie are two of the Great ____________________.
12 The ‘Great Bear’ is a group of ____________________.

37.2 Fill the gaps in the text with the if necessary.

My journey took me across the Atlantic Ocean from Europe to South America. I travelled through the Amazon rainforest and down through the interior of Brazil as far as Iguacu Falls. From there I headed north again, through Bolivia, round Lake Titikaka and up to Cuzco. Then I crossed the Andes and finally arrived in Lima. For the last part of the journey I flew to Jamaica in the West Indies.

37.3 What disaster is being described in each of these sentences?
1 It lifted a car about ten feet off the ground, and then we saw it disappear down the street.
2 It was about two metres deep and we watched as most of our furniture just floated away.
3 The grass turned yellow and most of the crops died.
4 The walls began to move visibly, and large cracks opened up in the ground.
5 We could see the lava slowly advancing towards the town just ten miles away.

37.4 Can you name everything marked on this map? Write your answers next to the symbols.
Weather

Weather conditions

Look at this list of common weather words. Notice that it is very common to form adjectives by adding ‘-y’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sun</td>
<td>sunny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cloud</td>
<td>cloudy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fog</td>
<td>foggy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heat</td>
<td>hot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wind</td>
<td>windy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ice</td>
<td>ic(e)y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shower</td>
<td>showery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heat</td>
<td>humid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humidity</td>
<td>humid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When it rains for a short period of time, we call it a shower, e.g. We had several showers yesterday afternoon.

When it is raining a lot we often say it’s pouring or it’s pouring with rain. This phrase is much more common than ‘it’s raining cats and dogs’, which many students seem to learn.

Temperature

Boiling hot warm not very warm cold (also chilly) freezing (= very cold)

People round the world have different ideas about temperature:

- 5°C (five degrees centigrade) is freezing for many Brazilians.
- -10°C (minus ten degrees or ten degrees below zero) is very cold but quite normal in the mountains in Switzerland during the winter when it usually snows a lot.
- 30–35°C is boiling for England and very unusual, but it is very common in parts of Spain during the summer.

Wind

The first word here is very gentle; the last is more than 100 km per hour and can be very dangerous.

a breeze a wind a strong wind a gale a hurricane

It was a hot day but there was a lovely breeze.

The wind blew my hat off.

The hurricane in Florida destroyed trees and buildings.

Thunderstorms

A spell (= period) of very hot weather often ends with a thunderstorm. First it becomes very humid (= hot and wet), then you get thunder and lightning, and finally, very heavy rain (= it pours with rain). Afterwards, it is usually cooler and it feels fresher.
Exercises

38.1 Identify the weather conditions in these pictures.

38.2 True or false? If a sentence is false, write a true sentence about the weather conditions in the sentence.

1. It often pours with rain in the desert.
2. It gets quite chilly in the desert in the evening.
3. Thunder makes a noise.
4. Lightning can kill people.
5. A shower is a gentle breeze.
6. A spell of hot weather may end in a thunderstorm.
7. If it is humid, the air will be very dry.
8. Below zero, water turns to ice.
9. Heavy rain means that it is pouring with rain.
10. When it’s foggy you need sunglasses.

38.3 Complete these scales.

... → wind → strong wind → ... → hurricane

... → hot → warm → not very warm → cold → ...

38.4 Complete this text with suitable words.

The single greatest influence on Japanese weather is the wind. During the summer it (1) ... from the Pacific, causing (2) ... and humid weather, but in winter, the north-westerly (3) ... from Siberia are very cold and it (4) ... heavily on the mountains of the north west. The south-eastern parts receive cold dry air. Between June and mid July, there is a (5) ... of wet weather when the rice fields get the water vital for growth. After that, there is less (6) ... rain, but the air is still (7) ... Autumn, however, is drier, and usually very pleasant.

Write a paragraph about the weather in your own country, or a specific part of your country, e.g. your own region. Try to use as many words as possible from the opposite page.
Using the land

Ground and soil
When we walk, our feet are on the ground (= the general word for the surface of the earth). For the top part of the ground where grass and flowers grow, we use the word soil.

There were no seats in the park, so we had to sit on the ground.
The ground is very hard because it hasn’t rained for weeks.
Plants don’t grow very well here because the soil is too dry.

Above the ground
Some land is used for parks and gardens where we often grow trees and plants (= living things with roots and leaves, smaller than trees which grow in the soil). First, you plant the tree or plant (= put the tree or plant in the ground), then you must water it (= give it water).

Land in the country is often used for agriculture/farming. Some farms concentrate on dairy produce such as milk, butter and cheese. Other farms keep animals which are slaughtered (= killed) and sold for their meat, e.g. cows and lambs. Some farms use the land to grow fruit, e.g. apples and pears; vegetables, e.g. potatoes and carrots; and cereals, e.g. wheat, maize and barley. When they are ready, farmers pick the fruit and harvest the other crops (= take the other crops from the ground). This period is called the harvest. We use the word crop(s) as a general word to describe all the things that are grown to be eaten:
In parts of Africa the crops failed because of the drought (= long period without rain).
We had a wonderful crop of barley last year.

Below the ground
One of the main activities below the ground is mining. This is the process of extracting (fml) (= removing or taking out) different materials, e.g. coal or gold, from below the ground. We call the place a mine, e.g. a coal mine or gold mine.

These are some of the metals we take out of the ground:
gold: a valuable yellow metal used to make coins and jewellery
silver: a valuable whitish metal used to make coins and jewellery
iron: usually takes the form of a hard dark-grey metal, and is used in building and to make tools.
It is also used to make steel
tin: a softer metal often used to cover other metals
copper: a soft reddish metal; it permits heat and electricity to pass through it easily
Exercises

39.1 Which nouns on the right often follow the verbs on the left? (There may be more than one noun for several of the verbs.)

1 plant coal
2 water cows
3 pick wheat
4 extract apples
5 grow plants
6 slaughter trees

39.2 Are these statements true or false? If false, correct them.

1 Plants need roots.
2 Soil is the top part of the ground.
3 Drought is a long period of rain.
4 If you extract something, you remove it.
5 The harvest is the period when we plant the crops.
6 Iron is used to make silver.

39.3 Complete the descriptions of these objects with a suitable ‘metal’.

1 a ........ can
2 a ........ spoon
3 a knife with a ........ blade
4 a frying pan with a ........ base
5 a ........ ring
6 these ........ bars are very strong

39.4 Complete these sentences with the correct ‘general’ word. Look at the example first.

Example: Apples, oranges and bananas are all types of ..........fruit ...........

1 Potatoes, beans and carrots are types of .................
2 Silver, tin and copper are types of .................
3 Milk, butter and cheese are all ................. products.
4 ................. is the general word for wheat, maize, barley, etc.
5 We use the word ................. as a general word for plants which are grown to be eaten.

39.5 Answer these questions about your own country.

1 Which of these are the most important to your economy: agriculture, mining or fishing?
2 Are any precious (= valuable e.g. gold or silver) metals found in your country?
3 What are some of the main crops grown in your country?
Animals and insects

A Pets and farm animals
Many people keep pets (domestic animals that live with people) in Britain. The most common are dogs and cats, but children in particular sometimes keep mice (singular = a mouse) and rabbits.

Farm animals include: sheep, pigs, cows, horses, chickens and goats.

Note: The word ‘sheep’ is the singular and plural form i.e. a sheep or some sheep. A young sheep is called a lamb.

B Wild animals
In a zoo or in the wild, you will find these wild animals.

C Common insects
Here are some common insects.

D In the water, in the air, and on the ground
Here are some creatures (living things, e.g. animals, birds, fish) that swim, fly, or move along the ground.
Exercises

40.1 Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Look at the examples first.

Examples: whale water (different) cat camel (same)

1 lion tiger 6 monkey mosquito
2 leopard mosquito 7 camel snake
3 bear eagle 8 leopard shark
4 gorilla giraffe 9 dog wasp
5 spider wild 10 mouse cow

40.2 Divide these words into three groups and give each one a title.

monkey horse goat fly lion cow elephant pig mosquito
butterfly tiger wasp sheep camel ant leopard bear chicken

40.3 Start each sentence with a suitable creature from the opposite page.

1 ....................... can fly at a great height.
2 ....................... can swim very long distances.
3 ....................... can understand lots of human commands.
4 ....................... can run very fast.
5 ....................... can travel through the desert for long distances without water.
6 ....................... can be 30 metres in length.
7 ....................... can eat fruit from tall trees.
8 ....................... change their skin several times a year.
9 ....................... can pick things up with their trunk.
10 ....................... provide us with wool.

40.4 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

1 They’ve got lots of pets: two dogs, four cats, and a ..................... .
2 Their farm animals include cows, sheep and ..................... .
3 The children love to see the ‘big cats’ at the zoo such as lions, tigers and ..................... .
4 I hate most insects, but particularly mosquitoes and ..................... .
5 We saw some really large animals at the Safari Park: elephants, giraffes and ..................... .

40.5 Can you match these creatures with their maximum speeds?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Speed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lion</td>
<td>64 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spider</td>
<td>0.05 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>elephant</td>
<td>80 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rabbit</td>
<td>56 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pig</td>
<td>40 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snail</td>
<td>18 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shark</td>
<td>270 kph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>golden eagle</td>
<td>1.88 kph</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Countries, nationalities and languages

Who speaks what where?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Nationality</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Britain</td>
<td>British</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Korean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>Mandarin (also Cantonese)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>Thai</td>
<td>Thai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Australian</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The United States</td>
<td>American</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>Saudi Arabian</td>
<td>Arabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Brazilian</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>Swiss</td>
<td>Swiss-German, French, Italian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>Egyptian</td>
<td>Arabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holland</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>Mexican</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russia</td>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>Russian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>Israeli</td>
<td>Hebrew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>Argentinian</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The people

When you are talking about people in general from a particular country, there are some nationalities that you can make plural with an ‘s’, but others can only be formed with the definite article (and no plural ‘s’):

- Brazilians
- Germans
- (The) Italians are (usually very ...)
- Russians
- Israelis

- The British
- The French
- The Swiss are (usually very ...)
- The Dutch
- The Japanese

Note:
- With both groups you can also use the word ‘people’: British people, German people, etc.
- When you talk about one person from these countries, you need to add woman/man/person to the group on the right: a Brazilian but a Japanese person; a German but a Swiss person, etc.
Exercises

41.1 Answer these questions without looking at the opposite page.
1. Write down three countries where the first language is English.
2. What language is spoken in Brazil?
3. What are people from Holland called?
4. Write down three languages spoken in Switzerland.
5. What language is spoken in Saudi Arabia?
6. What nationality are people from Sweden?
7. What language is spoken in Mexico?
8. What are people from Egypt called?
9. What is the first language in Israel?
10. Where do people speak Mandarin?

41.2 Mark the main stress on the words in the box, and practise saying them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Japan</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>Brazilian</th>
<th>Egyptian</th>
<th>Arabic</th>
<th>Italian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What do you notice about the stress on words ending -ia, -ian, and -ese?

41.3 Complete these sentences with the name of the people from the country on the right.

Examples: I’ve worked a lot with Germans...
           I’ve spent a lot of time with the French...
1. We do a lot of business with .....................
2. ..................... are usually hard-working.
3. I have always found ..................... very friendly.
4. People often say that ..................... are reserved.
5. ..................... are very organised.
6. I met a lot of ..................... on my trip to Athens.

41.4 Complete these sentences.
1. Bangkok is the capital of ..................... 6. Riyadh is the capital of .....................
2. Buenos Aires is the capital of ..................... 7. Athens is the capital of .....................
3. Ankara is the capital of ..................... 8. Tel Aviv is the capital of .....................
4. Seoul is the capital of ..................... 9. Stockholm is the capital of .....................
5. Cairo is the capital of ..................... 10. Lisbon is the capital of .....................

41.5 Can you identify these languages?
1. 3prakshyiné 4 今日は 7 goede dag 10 Benjoun
2. 안녕하세요 5 Feia Bou 8 Hola 11 Hej!
3. Gao 6 你妹妹 9 Grüez!

41.6 Have you met someone from each of the countries on the opposite page? Go through the list and tick the ones you have.
**A Parts of the body**

Learn the parts of the body that you don’t already know.

- forehead
- eyebrows
- cheek
- lips
- chin
- neck
- shoulders
- bust (chest for men)
- arm
- elbow
- waist
- bottom
- thigh
- hand
- wrist
- fingers
- thumb
- knee
- ankle
- heel
- toes

**B Physical actions**

You can breathe through your nose or your mouth. Most people breathe about 12–15 times a minute. People smile when they’re happy, or to be polite; they laugh when people say something funny; they may cry when they’re sad; they yawn when they’re tired, or bored. Many people nod their head to mean ‘yes’, and shake their head when they mean ‘no’. When you pick up something heavy, you must bend your knees and keep your back straight.

**C Common expressions**

- shake hands
- fold your arms
- comb your hair
- blow your nose
- bite your nails
42.1 How much of the picture can you label without looking at the page opposite?

42.2 Match the verbs on the left with a suitable part of the body on the right to form common expressions. Use each verb and noun once only.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Part of the Body</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>your knees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shake</td>
<td>your nose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comb</td>
<td>your nails</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fold</td>
<td>your head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend</td>
<td>your arms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nod</td>
<td>your hair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>hands</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

42.3 What do these actions often mean? (There may be lots of possible answers.)

1. People often smile when
2. They often breathe quickly after
3. They laugh when
4. They may bite their nails
5. They blow their nose
6. They shake their head
7. And nod their head
8. They cry
9. They yawn when

42.4 There are fourteen words describing parts of the body, either across or down, in this word square. Can you find them?
Describing people’s appearance

General

Positive: beautiful is generally used to describe women; handsome is used to describe men; good-looking is used for both; pretty is another positive word to describe a woman (often a girl) meaning ‘attractive and nice to look at’.

Negative: ugly is the most negative word to describe someone; plain is more polite.

Height and build

tall and slim  medium height and build  short and fat  medium height and very muscular

Note: Another word for slim is thin, but slim has a more positive meaning, e.g. John is lovely and slim, but his brother is terribly thin. Skinny also has the same meaning but is very negative. It is not very polite to say someone is fat; overweight is more neutral and polite.

Hair

straight  wavy  curly

fair blond(e)  light brown  dark brown  dark

Special features

The man on the left has got very pale skin (= white skin). He also has broad shoulders, with a small scar at the top of his left arm. The other man has dark skin. He also has a beard and moustache and quite a hairy chest and a tattoo.

Asking questions about a person’s appearance

Q: What does she look like?  A: She’s quite tall, with short fair hair.
Q: How tall is she?  A: About 1 metre 65.
Q: How much does she weigh?  A: I don’t know and it may be rude to ask. Probably about 45 kilos.
Exercises

43.1 Complete these sentences in a suitable way. (More than one answer may be possible.)

1. She’s got blonde
2. He’s got very pale
3. They’ve both got curly
4. I would say he was medium
5. Her brother has got very broad
6. She doesn’t like men with hairy
7. Last time I saw him he had grown a
8. He’s got very muscular
9. Both men were very good-
10. All of them have got dark

43.2 Replace the underlined word in each sentence with a word which is either more suitable or more polite.

1. He told me he met a handsome girl in the disco last night.
2. She’s beautiful but her younger sister is really quite ugly.
3. I think Peter is getting a bit fat, don’t you?
4. Most people want to stay slim, but not as skinny as that girl over there.
5. I think she’s hoping she’ll meet a few beautiful men at the tennis club.

43.3 You want to know about the following:
- someone’s general appearance
- their height
- their weight

What questions do you need to ask? Complete these questions.

What?
How?
How much?

Now answer these questions.

1. How tall are you?
2. How would you describe your build?
3. How much do you weigh?
4. What kind of hair have you got?
5. What colour is it?
6. Would you like it to be different? If so, what would you like?
7. Do you think you have any special features?
8. Are there any special features you would like to have?
9. Do you like beards?
10. Can you think of a famous woman you would describe as beautiful, and a famous man you would describe as good-looking?

If possible, ask another person these questions.
Describing character

A  Opposites
Many positive words describing character have clear opposites with a negative meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>warm and friendly</td>
<td>cold and unfriendly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind</td>
<td>unkind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nice, pleasant</td>
<td>horrible, unpleasant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generous (= happy to give/share)</td>
<td>mean (= never gives to others)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optimistic (= thinks positively)</td>
<td>pessimistic (= thinks negatively)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheerful (= happy and smiling)</td>
<td>miserable (= always seems unhappy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relaxed and easy-going</td>
<td>tense (= nervous; worries a lot; not calm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strong</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensitive</td>
<td>insensitive (= does not think about others’ feelings)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Jane is very tense at the moment because of her exams, but she’s usually quite relaxed and easy-going about most things.

I think the weather influences me a lot: when it’s sunny I feel more cheerful and optimistic; but when it’s cold and raining I get very miserable.

He seemed a bit unfriendly at first, but now I’ve got to know him I realise he’s very warm and kind.

The shop assistant told me that the dress I tried on looked better on people younger than me. I thought that was very insensitive of her, but at least she was being honest, I suppose.

B  Character in action
People often talk about qualities of character that you may need in a work situation. Again, some of these words come in pairs of opposites: one positive and one negative.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hard-working</td>
<td>lazy (= never does any work)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punctual (= always on time)</td>
<td>not very punctual; always late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reliable</td>
<td>unreliable (= you cannot trust / depend on someone like this)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clever, bright (infml)</td>
<td>stupid, thick (infml)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flexible</td>
<td>inflexible (= a very fixed way of thinking; unable to change)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ambitious</td>
<td>unambitious (= no desire to be successful and get a better job)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some pairs of opposites do not have a particularly positive or negative meaning:

He is very shy when you first meet him because he finds it difficult to talk to people and make conversation; but when he knows people quite well he’s much more self-confident.

People often say the British are very reserved (= do not show their feelings), but when you get to know them they can be very emotional like anyone else.

C  Using nouns
Some important qualities are expressed through nouns.

One of her great qualities is that she uses her initiative. (= she can think for herself and take the necessary action; she does not need to wait for orders all the time)

That boy has got no common sense (= he does stupid things and doesn’t think what he is doing). His sister, on the other hand, is very sensible. (= has lots of common sense)
Exercises

44.1 Organise these words into pairs of opposites and put them in the columns below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mean</th>
<th>clever</th>
<th>nice</th>
<th>lazy</th>
<th>relaxed</th>
<th>hard-working</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tense</td>
<td>cheerful</td>
<td>generous</td>
<td>unpleasant</td>
<td>stupid</td>
<td>miserable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Positive

Negative

44.2 What prefix forms the opposite of each of these words? (You need three different prefixes.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>kind</th>
<th>flexible</th>
<th>friendly</th>
<th>honest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reliable</td>
<td>sensitive</td>
<td>ambitious</td>
<td>pleasant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

44.3 How would you describe the person in each of these descriptions?

1. He never bought me a drink all the time we were together.
2. I have to tell her what to do every minute of the working day. She wouldn’t even open a window without someone’s permission.
3. He often promises to do things but half the time he forgets.
4. She’s always here on time.
5. I don’t think he’s done any work since he’s been here.
6. She finds it difficult to meet people and talk to strangers.
7. He could work in any of the departments, and it doesn’t matter to him if he’s on his own or part of a team.
8. One of the great things about her is that she is so aware of what other people think or feel.
9. Bob, on the other hand, is the complete opposite. He is always making people angry or upset because he just doesn’t consider their feelings.
10. The other thing about Bob is that he really wants to get the supervisor’s job and then become boss for the whole department.

44.4 What nouns can be formed from these adjectives? Use a dictionary to help you.

Example: kind kindness

punctual optimistic reliable lazy
confident generous ambitious stupid
sensitive strong flexible shy

44.5 Choose three words from the opposite page which describe you. Is there one quality you do not have but would like to have? What, in your opinion, is the worst quality described on the opposite page? If possible, compare your answers with a friend.
Human feelings and actions

A

Feelings

**Noun**
- love (≠ hate)
- happiness (≠ sadness)
- anger
- fear
- pride
- jealousy
- embarrassment

**Adjective(s)**
- happy (≠ sad)
- angry
- afraid (of) / frightened (of)
- proud (of)
- jealous (of)
- embarrassed/embarrassing (see Unit 30)

**Note:**
- Pride has different meanings, but the most common is the feeling of satisfaction you have because you (or people you are connected with) have done something well.
  - He was very proud when his wife became the first President of the organisation.
- Jealousy is a feeling of anger and unhappiness you may have if (a) someone you love shows a lot of interest in others, or (b) if someone has something you want / don’t have.
  - a) My boyfriend gets very jealous when I talk to other boys.
  - b) He’s jealous of his brother because his brother is more intelligent and makes more money.
- A common adjective is upset, which means unhappy, sad, and even angry, because something unpleasant has happened, e.g. He was very upset when we didn’t invite him.

B

Ways of ...

**Ways of speaking**
- whisper (v, n) (= speak very quietly)
- shout (v, n) (= speak in a very loud voice)

**Ways of looking**
- stare (v, n) (= look at someone/something in a fixed way for a long time)
- glance (at) (v, n) (= look at someone or something very quickly)

**Ways of walking**
- stroll (v, n) (= walk in a slow casual way)
- march (v, n) (= walk quickly and with a clear purpose/reason)

C

Things we do with our hands

- clap
- knock (on a door) (v, n)
- wave (goodbye)
- point (at sth./sb.)
- press (a button)
- punch someone
Exercises

45.1 What nouns can be formed from these adjectives?
angry sad happy proud jealous embarrassed

45.2 Find the logical ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left.

1 He was very proud when a someone stole his money.
2 He was very jealous when b his father appeared on TV with the Prime Minister.
3 He was very embarrassed when c he heard that his aunt had died.
4 He was very angry when d he saw those big dogs running towards him.
5 He was very sad when e he bought her a birthday present on the wrong day.
6 He was very frightened when f his best friend went out with the girl he really liked.

45.3 Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.
1 Would you feel embarrassed or upset (or both) if you forgot your mother’s birthday or your father’s birthday?
2 Do you ever feel frightened in a car (as a passenger) because you are going very fast?
3 Do you get angry when other people want you to do things that you don’t want to do?
4 If you made a stupid mistake in English, would you feel embarrassed?
5 Is there any one thing that you are very proud of?
6 Are there any common situations where you sometimes feel embarrassed?

45.4 What are these people doing? Describe their actions using words from the opposite page.

1 She stopped working and looked quickly at the clock.
2 As we were in the library, he spoke very quietly in my ear.
3 We walked casually along the beach and then stopped for a drink.
4 He made us all walk quickly up the hill.
5 The man kept looking at Susan, but she didn’t seem to notice.
6 Jim doesn’t know what happened, except that the man hit him hard on the side of his face.

45.5 Replace the underlined words with a single verb that has the same meaning.
1 She stopped working and looked quickly at the clock.
2 As we were in the library, he spoke very quietly in my ear.
3 We walked casually along the beach and then stopped for a drink.
4 He made us all walk quickly up the hill.
5 The man kept looking at Susan, but she didn’t seem to notice.
6 Jim doesn’t know what happened, except that the man hit him hard on the side of his face.
Family and friends

A  Relatives (= members of your family)

These are the most important relatives (also called relations):

- Your parents’ parents
- Your parents’ brother and sister
- Your aunt’s/uncle’s children
- The father and mother of the person you marry
- The brother and sister of the person you marry
- Your brother’s/sister’s children
- The person you marry dies, so you are a ...
- Your mother or father remarries, so you have a ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>male</th>
<th>female</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grandfather</td>
<td>grandmother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncle(s)</td>
<td>aunt(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cousin(s)</td>
<td>cousin(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>father-in-law</td>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brother-in-law</td>
<td>sister-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nephew(s)</td>
<td>niece(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>widower</td>
<td>widow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>step-father</td>
<td>step-mother</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B  Family background (= family history)

My grandfather was a market gardener in Ireland. He grew flowers, fruit and vegetables, and sold them in the market every day. He worked hard all his life, and when he died, his son (now my uncle) and daughter (my mother) inherited a large house and garden (= received this house and garden from my grandfather when he died). They carried on the business together until my mother met my father. They got married, moved to England, and I was born two years later. They didn’t have any more children, so I am an only child.

C  Family names

When you are born, your family gives you a first name, e.g. James, Kate, Sarah and Alex are common first names in Britain. Your family name (also called your surname) is the one that all the family share e.g. Smith, Brown, Jones, and O’Neill are common surnames in Britain. Some parents give their children a middle name (like a first name), but you do not usually say this name. Your full name is all the names you have, e.g. Sarah Jane Smith.

D  Changing times

Society changes and so do families. In some places, people may decide to live together but do not get married. They are not husband and wife, but call each other their partner. There are also many families in some parts of the world where the child or children live(s) with just their mother or father; these are sometimes called single-parent families.

E  Friends

We can use a number of adjectives before friend:

- an old friend (= someone you have known for a long time)
- a close friend (= a good friend; someone you like and trust)
- your best friend (= the one friend you feel closest to)

We use the word colleagues to describe the people we work with.

F  Ex-

We use this for a husband/wife/boyfriend/girlfriend we had in the past but do not have now:

- The children stay with my ex-husband at the weekend.
- I saw an ex-girlfriend of mine at the disco last night.
Exercises

46.1 Look at the family tree and complete the sentences below.

Albert & Mary Dodds

John = Susan  Jill = Paul  Barry = Sheila

Jill = Paul (died 1995)

Eve  Ana  Timothy  Tom

1 John is Jill's ...........................................
2 Timothy is Jill's ......................................
3 Eve and Ana are Timothy's ..........................
4 Eve is Sheila's ........................................
5 Albert Dodds is Tom's ............................... 
6 Barry is Eve's ........................................
7 Susan is Timothy's .................................
8 As Paul died in 1995, Jill is a ..................... 
9 Tom is Mary's ....................................... 
10 The only two people who are not related are .................................. and ..................................

46.2 Answer these questions about yourself and your country.
1 What's your first name?
2 What's your surname?
3 Is that a common name in your country?
4 Do you have a middle name?
5 Are you an only child?
6 Who is your oldest friend?
7 Do you work? If so, how many of your work colleagues are also your friends?
8 Do you have any ex-boyfriends or ex-girlfriends who speak English very well?
9 Are single-parent families becoming more common in your country?
10 In your country, do more and more people live together without getting married?

46.3 Draw your own family tree. Are there any relationships you cannot describe in English? Can you also write a short summary of your family background (as in B on the opposite page)?
## Ages and stages

### Growing up

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Stage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0–1 approximately</td>
<td>a baby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1–2</td>
<td>a toddler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2–12 approximately</td>
<td>a child – this period is your childhood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13–17 approximately</td>
<td>a teenager (14 = early teens)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18+</td>
<td>an adult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20–30</td>
<td>in your twenties (24–26 = mid twenties)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30–40</td>
<td>in your thirties (38 = late thirties)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40+</td>
<td>people are middle-aged; in middle age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 or 65</td>
<td>retirement (= when people stop work; they are retired)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75+</td>
<td>old age (you can also use elderly)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: For boys, the period between 14–17 approximately (slightly younger for girls) is called adolescence, i.e. you are an adolescent. In law you are an adult at the age of 18, but many people think of you as an adult when you leave school.

### Childhood and adolescence

Sam (on the right) was born in Scotland but when he was two, his father got a new job in London and he grew up in the south of England. He went to university at 18 where he ...

### Romance

... where he met Anthea. He went out with her (= she was his girlfriend; he was her boyfriend) for three years, but towards the end they had lots of rows (= arguments) and they split up (= broke up / separated). In his mid twenties ...

### Marriage

... in his mid twenties he met Maureen. They fell in love and got married within six months. A year later she got pregnant and they had their first child, a boy. As you can see, she is now expecting their second child (to be pregnant = to be expecting a baby). But sadly Sam met another woman and he left Maureen two months ago to live with the other woman.
Exercises

47.1 What stage of life are these people at?
1 Paul isn’t 2 yet, so he’s still a ..............................................
2 Albert was a bus driver for 40 years but stopped work two years ago, so he is now ..............................................
3 Susan is 25, so she is in her ..............................................
4 Caroline is 50 this year so she is now in her ..............................................
5 Ron is 33 and his wife is 32, so they are both in ..............................................
6 Joan is 75 this year, so she is quite ..............................................
7 Jason was born six weeks ago, so he’s a ..............................................
8 Leyla is 13 this year, so she’ll soon be a ..............................................
9 Ravi is 18 this year, so legally he becomes ..............................................
10 15 is often a difficult age for boys going through ..............................................

47.2 Are these sentences true or false about the people on the opposite page? If the sentences are false, write the correct answer below. Try to answer the questions first without looking at the opposite page.
1 Sam was born in Scotland.
2 He grew up in the south of Ireland.
3 He went out with Anthea for two years.
4 They split up because Sam went to live in Japan.
5 Sam fell in love with Maureen.
6 They had a baby a year after they got married.
7 Maureen is now expecting her third child.
8 Maureen left Sam.

47.3 Find the logical ending for each of the sentence beginnings on the left and construct Rebecca’s life.
1 Rebecca was born a was a boy at her secondary school.
2 She grew up b in her early thirties.
3 Her first boyfriend c on a farm with lots of animals.
4 She went out with him d when she was in her late twenties.
5 She went to university e in a small local hospital in 1972.
6 She fell in love f for six months.
7 They got married g just after the baby was born.
8 She had a baby h with another student doing medicine.
9 Her father retired i when she left school.

How many of the sentence beginnings on the left can you answer about your own life? Answer the ones you can.
Daily routines

A Sleep
During the week I usually wake up at 6.30 a.m. I sometimes lie in bed for five minutes but then I have to get up (= get out of bed and get dressed). Most evenings, I go to bed at about 11.30 p.m. I'm usually very tired, so I go to sleep / fall asleep very quickly. Occasionally though, I can't get to sleep (= succeed in sleeping). When that happens, I sometimes manage to fall asleep about 3 a.m., then I oversleep (= sleep too long) in the morning. If I have a late night (= go to bed very late; ≠ an early night), I try to have a nap (= a short sleep, e.g. 20–25 minutes) in the afternoon. The weekends are different. On Saturday and Sunday I have a lie-in. (= stay in bed until later, e.g. 8 a.m. or 8.30 a.m.)

B Food
In the week I have breakfast at 7.30 a.m., lunch at 1.00 p.m., and dinner around 7 p.m. I also have one or two snacks (= small amounts of food), e.g. cakes, biscuits or fruit, during the day at work. As I live alone / on my own / by myself (= without other people), I also have to make my own breakfast and dinner (= prepare breakfast and dinner for myself), but during the week I don't bother (= make an effort) to cook very much. I also have to feed (= give food to) my two cats twice a day as well.
Note: With breakfast, lunch or dinner in general, there is no definite article (the).

C Keeping clean
In the summer I have a shower in the morning, but in the winter I often have a bath instead (= in place of a shower). Sometimes I have a shave at the same time, or I shave when I have a wash and clean/brush my teeth after breakfast. I wash my hair two or three times a week.
Note: In some contexts, it is more common in English to use have + noun than a single verb, e.g. I'm going to have a wash. [NOT I'm going to wash.]

D Work
In the morning I leave home about 8.15 a.m. and get to work (= arrive at work) by 9 a.m. I have a lunch break (= stop work for lunch) from 1–2 p.m., and a couple of short breaks during the day. I leave work around 5.30 p.m. and get home about 6.15 p.m.

E Evenings
During the week I usually stay in (= stay at home) and have a rest (= relax and do nothing). But at the weekend I often go out (= leave the house for social reasons, e.g. go to the cinema or disco with friends), but quite often I also have friends for dinner (= invite friends to my house and cook dinner for them), or friends just come round (= visit me at the house) for a chat (infml) (= conversation) or we play cards, e.g. poker or bridge.

F Housework
I do the shopping (= buy the food) on Saturday. Fortunately (= luckily) I have a cleaner (= a person who cleans) and she does most of the housework: she does my washing (= washes the clothes), the washing-up (= washes the dishes) and does most of the ironing.
Exercises

48.1 The opposite page includes a number of expressions with ‘have + noun’, e.g. have breakfast, have a shower. Can you remember six more?

have ........................................ have ........................................
have ........................................ have ........................................
have ........................................ have ........................................

48.2 Now complete some more word partnerships and expressions by matching the verbs on the left with the correct word on the right.

1 fall ...................................... a rest
2 do .......................................... my teeth
3 have ........................................ the dog
4 play ........................................ asleep
5 go ........................................... cards
6 clean ...................................... the ironing
7 feed ....................................... early
8 get up ..................................... to bed

48.3 Complete this dialogue with suitable words or phrases from the opposite page.

A: Don’t !!!! ............... to cook a meal this evening.
B: Why not?
A: We could !!!! ................ instead.
B: Yeah. Where?
A: Well I’d like to go to that new Korean restaurant. We could ask Karen and Mike to come.
B: That’s miles away. No, I think I’d rather !!!! ................ and have an !!!! ................ night.
A: But it’s Friday. You can have a !!!! ................ tomorrow if we have a late night.
B: Yes I know but I’m tired. Look, why don’t you ask Karen and Mike to !!!! ................ for a meal. I can order some pizzas from the takeaway and we’ll have a nice evening here.
A: Sorry, but if you don’t want to come to the restaurant with me, I’ll go !!!! ..............

48.4 Here are some common sentences in English. Translate them into your own language and then decide which of these sentences you often use in your own language.

1 Did you go out last night?
2 I think I’m going to stay in this evening.
3 I overslept this morning.
4 I couldn’t get to sleep last night.
5 Do you want to come round this evening?
6 I forgot to do the shopping.
7 What time did you get home?
8 I nearly fell asleep in the lesson today.

48.5 Can you find three facts from the opposite page which are exactly the same in your routine, three which are similar, and three which are completely different? Complete the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>same</th>
<th>similar</th>
<th>completely different</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I go to bed around 11.30 p.m.</td>
<td>I leave home at 8.40 a.m.</td>
<td>I never do any ironing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ........................................</td>
<td>........................................</td>
<td>........................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 ........................................</td>
<td>........................................</td>
<td>........................................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 ........................................</td>
<td>........................................</td>
<td>........................................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I live in a block of flats. My brother lives on the ground floor, and I have a flat on the third floor. Unfortunately there is no lift, so I have to climb three flights of stairs to reach my flat. But I do have a balcony with a wonderful view of the park opposite the flats.

Note: Steps are usually outside a building or inside a public building; they are stone or wooden. Stairs (pl) connect floors inside a building and are often covered with a carpet.

C Buying and renting

Some people buy a flat or house (= they own it / it belongs to them). When they do this in Britain, people usually borrow money from a bank or an organisation called a Building Society. This money, which is called a mortgage, is often paid back over 25 years. Other people rent a house or flat (= they pay money every week or month to the person who owns the house). When they do this, the money they pay is called the rent, and the person who owns the house or flat is the landlord.

D Describing a flat or house

The rooms on the ground floor are quite dark (= light) because they don’t get (= receive) very much sun. They are also quite noisy (= quiet) because they are near the roads and the traffic. The other negative thing is that the rooms are draughty (= cold air comes into the room through the windows and under the doors because they don’t fit very well). This means it is expensive to heat the rooms (= to keep the rooms warm). Fortunately I have a very good central heating system. In other ways, it is also very nice: it’s in good condition (= in a good state/doesn’t need to be repaired; ≠ in bad condition), and the rooms are huge/enormous (= very, very big; ≠ tiny / very, very small)
Exercises

49.1 What can you remember about the house and block of flats on the opposite page? Without looking, try to answer these questions. If you think an answer is false, correct it. Finally, check your answers by looking at the opposite page.

1. Does the house have a garage?
2. Does it have a fence around the front garden?
3. Is there a window in the roof?
4. Is the gate open or shut?
5. How many steps are there in front of the entrance to the block of flats?
6. Does each flat have a balcony?
7. Does the brother live on the first floor?
8. Do the flats have a view of the countryside?

49.2 Complete these sentences with a suitable noun or verb.

1. I opened the ................., walked up the ................. and rang the .................
2. We had to ................. six flights of stairs to get to her flat because the ................. wasn’t working.
3. I’ve got a great ................. from my balcony.
4. Do you own the flat or do you ................. it?
5. I’m living in the house now but it actually ................. to my brother. He bought it two years ago. It was in very bad ................. then, but he spent a lot of money on it.
6. It costs a lot of money to ................. a house when you live in a cold climate. Central ................. is usually quite expensive.

49.3 Write down four more positive things and four more negative things you could say about a house/flat or the rooms in a house/flat. When you have finished, compare your answers with section D opposite.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the rooms are very light</td>
<td>the rooms are very dark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now think about your answers again. Which positive features are the most important for you? Which negative features do you hate the most?

49.4 What about your home? Answer these questions.

1. Do you live in a house or flat?
2. If you live in a flat, what floor is it on?
3. If you live in a house, do you have a garden?
4. Does the house/flat belong to you (or your family), or do you rent it?
5. Do you have your own garage or personal parking space?
6. Would you describe your house/flat as dark or light?
7. Is it noisy or quiet?
8. Do you have central heating?
Around the home I

A Rooms

The living room or lounge (= where you sit, relax, talk and watch TV); the dining room; the kitchen; the bedroom(s); and the bathroom(s).

Some people also have a study (= room with a desk where you work), a utility room (= a room usually next to the kitchen, where you have a washing machine), a spare room (= a room you don't use every day. Often this is a room that guests can use), and possibly a playroom for small children.

B The lounge

The lounge

While the cat was asleep in the armchair, I sat on the sofa and had a look at the paper. Then I turned on the TV and went to make a cup of tea.

C The kitchen

I put the meat in the oven, put my dirty clothes in the washing machine, made the coffee and put the milk back in the fridge.
Exercises

50.1 Complete the descriptions. (There may be more than one possible answer.)
1 The bedroom, that’s where you ...sleep...
2 The kitchen, that’s where you do the ...
3 The bathroom, that’s where you have a ...and ...
4 The lounge, that’s where you ...and ...
5 The dining room, that’s where you ...
6 A spare room, that’s often where ...
7 A study, that’s usually where you ...
8 A utility room, that’s often where ...

50.2 You are in the kitchen. Where would you put these things?
1 milk
2 meat that you are going to cook
3 dirty clothes
4 dirty cups and saucers
5 clean cups and saucers
6 biscuits and a packet of spaghetti

50.3 Here are some things you find in the lounge or kitchen but the letters are jumbled. What are they, and where do they belong?
skin nacitusr rapcet shadriswhe teklet
faos veon digref hiamacr pobcadru acepasnu

50.4 Complete these sentences with the correct adverb or preposition.
1 He put the plates ........ the cupboard.
2 I took the ham ........ of the fridge, made myself a couple of sandwiches, and then I put the rest of the ham ........ in the fridge.
3 I usually sit ........ the sofa and my husband sits ........ an armchair.
4 I was bored, so I turned ........ the television.
5 You normally cook it ........ the oven for about forty minutes.
6 I took the butter ........ of the fridge and put it ........ the table.

50.5 Imagine you have just moved into a new flat, and for the first six months you can only have six of the following. Which would you choose?
sofa carpets dishwasher TV cooker curtains fridge desk
hi-fi bed dining table washing machine kettle saucepans
food mixer armchair

50.6 Write down:
1 three things in the lounge and kitchen you can turn on/off.
2 three things in the kitchen you can wash.
3 three things in the lounge and kitchen you can sit on.
4 two things you can use to boil water.
A The bedroom

I put on my pyjamas, got into bed, set the alarm clock, switched off the light, and went to sleep.

B The bathroom

I didn’t have time for a bath, but I had a wash, cleaned my teeth, and then I went to school.

C Housework (U)

My room is very clean and tidy (= everything in order), but my brother is very untidy; he leaves his clothes all over the floor and never makes his bed. What’s worse, he doesn’t clean his room very often, so most of the time it is quite dirty.

I do the washing-up every evening after dinner, and I normally do the washing and ironing at the weekend when I have a bit more free time. I also hoover the carpets and polish the dining room table once a week.
Exercises

51.1 Find the correct ending on the right for each of these sentence beginnings on the left, then put the sentences in the most logical order.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Left side</th>
<th>Right side</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I cleaned</td>
<td>the light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 I went</td>
<td>into bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 I set</td>
<td>a wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I switched off</td>
<td>my teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I had</td>
<td>to sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I put on</td>
<td>the alarm clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I got</td>
<td>my pyjamas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

51.2 The pictures show six things the woman did this morning. Complete the sentences below.

1 She ........................................... 4 She ...........................................
2 She ........................................... 5 She ...........................................
3 She ........................................... 6 She ...........................................

How often do you do these things? Complete these sentences about yourself.

1 I often ...........................................
2 I sometimes ....................................
3 I occasionally ................................
4 I never ........................................
5 I ..................................................
6 I ..................................................

51.3 Test your memory. Cover the opposite page and answer these questions about the pictures.

1 Does the alarm clock show 11.30? 5 Is the girl in the bathroom holding a towel?
2 Does he have one pillow or two? 6 Is she looking in the mirror?
3 Is the wardrobe open? 7 Is the shower above the bath?
4 How many drawers does the chest of drawers have? 8 Can you see any soap on the washbasin?

How well do you know your own home? Answer these questions as quickly as possible.

1 Have you got a mirror above the washbasin in the bathroom?
2 Have you got a towel rail on the same wall as the washbasin?
3 Is the toilet next to the bath/shower?
4 Have you got a wardrobe and chest of drawers in your bedroom?
5 Have you got a lamp on your bedside table?
6 Have you got an alarm clock?
52 Everyday problems

A  There's something wrong with ...

If there is a problem with a machine or a thing that you use e.g. TV, light, washing
machine, computer, food mixer, pen, etc., we often use these expressions:

There's something wrong with the TV. (= there is a problem with it)
The light's not working. (= not functioning / there is no light)
The shower's not working properly. (= it is functioning but not very well)
The telephone is out of order. (= not in use / not functioning)

Note: The phrase out of order is often used when a public machine or piece of equipment
isn't working, e.g. public telephone, public toilet, drinks machine at a station, etc.

B  In the home

Yesterday morning Paul had a lot of problems.

He dropped a cup and it broke.

He got another cup, made a coffee, and then spilt it.

It ruined (= destroyed) his T-shirt because there was a large stain on it.

He decided to make some toast, but he burnt the first piece (if you burn something, you
damage it with fire), then realised he'd run out of bread (= the bread was finished / there
was no more bread). He did not leave home in a good mood (= feeling very happy).

C  Out and about

After Paul went out, things got worse. He left home with a
ten-pound note in his pocket, and walked to the bus stop.
Unfortunately he was a bit late and the bus was a bit early, so he missed the bus. While he waited for the next one, he got out his walkman, but the batteries had run out (= the batteries were finished). When the bus arrived, he got on and put his hand in his pocket - no ten-pound note (he had lost his money). The driver told him to get off. He didn't want to be late for school, so he started running. Moments later, he saw a dog, but not its lead - and tripped over the lead.

He got to his feet, carried on to school, then he realised he had left his bag on the bus.

Note: Students often say 'he forgot his bag on the bus' in this situation. In English, we must
use the verb leave if we say where something is. For example:

I've forgotten my bag; but I left my bag on the bus.
Exercises

52.1 Complete the past tense and past participle of these verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trip</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

52.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the correct ending on the right.

1. I dropped the radio on the floor  
   a. when I lit that cigarette.
2. The batteries have run out  
   b. and had to wait ages for another.
3. I’m afraid I left  
   c. and it made a mess on the carpet.
4. I spilt the drink  
   d. to bring my money.
5. I missed the bus  
   e. my money at home.
6. I burnt myself  
   f. and now I can’t get it to work.
7. I forgot  
   g. so I can’t listen to my walkman.

52.3 This is what happened when Paul had a party at his house. Write a description of the damage.

1.  
2.  
3.  

52.4 Write logical answers for each of these questions, using vocabulary from the opposite page.

1. How did you break that glass?
2. Why can’t we watch TV?
3. How did you cut your knee like that?
4. I’m cold. What’s wrong with the central heating?
5. What happened to the money I gave you?
6. Where’s your homework?
7. What’s wrong with this radio?
8. Why can’t you use the public phone in the station?

52.5 Answer these questions using often / occasionally / hardly ever / never.

How often do you:

drop things?  break things?  burn things?
spill things?  lose things?  forget things?
trip over things?  leave things behind?  run out of things?

What sort of things do you drop, burn, run out of, etc.?
Money

A Notes and coins

Here are some examples of British money. The currency (= the type of money used in a country) is called sterling.

- ten pounds
- a ten-pound note
- fifty pence (we usually say 50p)
- a fifty-pence piece

B Common verbs

Notice how these common verbs are used.

- **spend** £££ (on) sth. Last week I **spent** £100 **on** food, and £20 **on** books.
- **pay** (for) sth. I **paid** £200 **for** my new desk. (= it cost me £200)
- **cost** My new desk **cost** (me) £200. (= I **paid** £200)
- **charge** The mechanic **charged** me £100. (= asked me to pay £100 for the service he provided)
- **lend** Could you **lend** me some money? or
- **borrow** Could I **borrow** some money?
- **waste** Parents often think that children **waste** their money (= use it badly) on sweets and other things that they don’t need.
- **save** (up) I’m **saving** (up) (= keeping some of my money when I receive it) for a new bike. I should have enough by the end of the year.

C Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>free</th>
<th>cheap</th>
<th>reasonable</th>
<th>quite expensive</th>
<th>very expensive</th>
<th>incredibly expensive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
<td>$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D Important words and phrases

- I can’t **afford** (= don’t have enough money) to go on holiday this year.
- How much is that watch **worth**? (= What is the **value** of that watch?)
- It’s **worth** about £50. (= the **value** is £50)
- The **cost** of living (= how much people pay for things) is very high in places like Sweden or Norway, but people still have a good **standard** of living (= the level of money and comfort people have).
Exercises

53.1 Fill the gaps using the past tense of verbs from the box. Be careful, most of them are irregular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>buy</th>
<th>spend</th>
<th>lose</th>
<th>pay</th>
<th>cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>win</td>
<td>waste</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>give</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. My car was five years old, so I .............. it and .............. a new one.
2. I was very sad when I .............. my watch in the street. It was a present from my wife and it .............. her a lot of money. Fortunately, somebody .............. it the next day and took it to a Police Station.
3. I .............. over £2,000 for my computer, but it isn’t worth very much now.
4. My father .............. me £50 last week but I .............. most of it on a ticket for a concert on Friday.
5. Last week somebody .............. £1m in a game on television. It was incredibly exciting.
6. I’m afraid I .............. my money on those CDs because I never play them.

53.2 What can you say in these situations? Complete the sentences but do not use the underlined words and phrases.

Example: You want to tell a friend that a restaurant wasn’t cheap.

... The restaurant was quite expensive.

1. You want to know the value of your friend’s gold ring.
   How much is .......................................................?
2. A friend wants to go to an expensive restaurant but you don’t have enough money.
   I’m afraid I ..........................................................
3. You want to borrow some money from a friend.
   Could you ........................................................?
4. You want to know how much a friend paid for her dictionary.
   How much ........................................................?

53.3 How quickly can you answer these questions? Write down answers to all of them in one minute, then go back and check. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1. Is the currency in America called the dollar?
2. Is a five-pound note worth less than a fifty-pence piece?
3. If you lend something to someone, do they borrow it?
4. If you waste money, do you use it well?
5. Is ‘sterling’ a currency?
6. If you ‘can’t afford’ something, do you have enough money for it?
7. Does ‘cost of living’ mean the same as ‘standard of living’?
8. If someone tells you a hotel is reasonable, is it very expensive?

53.4 Write down the approximate price of six things in your country, e.g. a daily newspaper, a short bus journey, a cup of coffee in a bar/cafe, a ticket for the cinema, a takeaway hamburger, a pair of jeans, etc. Do you think the price is expensive, reasonable, cheap? Compare your answers with someone from the same town, and if possible, someone from a different country.
Health: illness and disease

A  Common problems

She's sneezing.  She's coughing.  She's got a sore throat.  She's blowing her nose.  She's got a temperature.

What's the matter?  How do you know? (the symptoms)  Cause of illness
I've got a cold  a sore throat, sneezing, a cough  a virus
I've got flu (U) (more serious than a cold)  symptoms for a cold + aching muscles and a temperature, e.g. 39.5  a virus
I've got hay fever (U)  sneezing, runny nose, sore eyes  allergic reaction to pollen from grass
I've got diarrhoea (U)  I keep going to the toilet  often food, or a virus
I feel sick  I want to vomit (= be sick)  many e.g. food, alcohol
I've got a hangover  headache, feeling sick  too much alcohol

Note: For these illnesses, you can either buy something from the chemist, or go to your doctor, who may give you a prescription (= a piece of paper with an order for some medicine) that you get from the chemist.

B  Aches and pains

Nouns: We only use ache with the following: I've got toothache (U), a stomach-ache, backache (U), earache (U) and a headache. For other parts of the body we use pain, e.g. I woke up in the night with a terrible pain in my chest.

Verbs: You can use ache for some things, e.g. my back aches; but hurt is more common to describe real pain, and it can be used with or without a direct object:
She hurt her foot when she jumped off the bus and fell over. (also injured here) or She hurt herself when she jumped off the bus and fell over.
I hit my leg against the table and it really hurts. (= gives me a terrible pain)

Adjectives: The only common adjective is painful (= painless):
I had an injection yesterday and it was very painful.
A: Did it hurt when you had your filling? (= when the dentist fills a hole/cavity in the tooth)
B: No, it was painless.

C  Serious illnesses

Doctors believe smoking is the major cause of lung cancer.
He had a heart attack and died almost immediately.
Hepatitis is a liver disease.
Asthma (chest illness causing breathing problems) has become more common.

Note: Illness and disease are often used in the same way, but disease is used for a serious condition caused by an infection e.g. a liver disease. Illness is a more general word.
Exercises

54.1 Write down the main symptom or symptoms for these conditions.
1 a cold: .................................................................
2 flu: ...........................................................................
3 hay fever: ............................................................... 
4 a hangover: ............................................................
5 diarrhoea: .................................................................
6 asthma: .................................................................

54.2 Look at the underlined letters in these pairs of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Look at the examples first.

Examples: ache pain
constipated stomach same

constipated stomach different
1 disease diarrhoea 4 virus illness
2 chemist ache 5 flu muscle
3 hurt allergic 6 cough enough

54.3 Look at the pictures and write what happened in the space below. Try to use at least three or four words or phrases from the opposite page.

I had ............................................................................

54.4 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.
1 I hit my hand on the desk and it really ................. .
2 They say she died of a heart .........................
3 She had some apples that weren’t ready to eat and now she’s got stomachache ...............
4 I’ve got this terrible ......................... in my neck from sleeping in the wrong position.
5 He died of ......................... cancer even though he never smoked a cigarette in his life.
6 I went to the doctor, and she gave me a ..................... for some tablets.
7 Pollution makes her ......................... worse and it’s difficult for her to breathe.
8 There are different forms of hepatitis; one is a more serious ......................... than the other.
9 I hurt ......................... when I fell off that chair.
10 My back ......................... from sitting at that computer all day.

54.5 Look at the opposite page again. Have you had any of these illnesses recently? Have you had any aches and pains recently? Make a list of the ones you have had. Are there any other illnesses you have had or still have? If so, find the name for it/them in English.
Health: injuries

Common injuries

An injury is damage to part of your body, usually caused by an accident in the home, on the roads, or during a game, e.g. of football. Here are some common injuries:

1. I cut (v, n) my finger using a knife it's bleeding a bit
2. I cut my leg quite badly I fell over it's bleeding quite a lot
3. I twisted my ankle running for a bus I can't walk on it easily
4. I broke my arm I fell off my bike I can't use it
5. I've got concussion playing football I'm confused; don't know where I am
6. I burnt my hand taking something out of a hot oven it's very painful
7. I've got a bruise (n, v) on my arm I hit it on the side of my desk it's swollen and blue/black in colour

Solution
- a plaster
- a bandage (n, v)
- rest
- plaster (U) and a sling
- rest
- special cream
- ice pack

Hospital treatment

Look carefully at the key words in these texts.

John fell off a chair, hit his head on the floor, and knocked himself unconscious. His wife called an ambulance but John was still unconscious when it arrived. He was rushed to hospital (= taken very quickly) where they kept him for two days for blood tests.

I jumped for the ball and collided with another player (= we ran into / hit each other). We both had cuts on our head, but I had to go to hospital for eight stitches.

Wounds and injuries

Wound (n, v) and injury are both used to describe damage to the body, but a wound is generally caused by a weapon (e.g. gun or knife) and it is usually intentional.

He shot the man in the chest. (= a bullet wound in the chest) [from a gun]
He stabbed the boy in the back. (= a knife wound in the back)
He got into a fight and got beaten up. He had a black eye and two broken ribs.
Exercises

55.1 Complete the table with the correct verb forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td></td>
<td>blood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound</td>
<td></td>
<td>bandage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injury</td>
<td></td>
<td>bruise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shot</td>
<td></td>
<td>treatment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

55.2 Look at the pictures and write the story.

Now compare your story with the model answer in the key.

55.3 Complete these conversations in a suitable way.

1 A: ... bleeding quite a bit, so I had to put a plaster on it before I could finish.
   B: How did you do it, anyway?
   A: Oh, I was ..........................................................

2 A: ... the next day the eye was really swollen and he had bruises down both his arms.
   B: My goodness. What did he tell his parents?
   A: More or less the truth. He said ..................................

3 A: ... tried to get up again but I couldn’t move. It was incredibly painful, but
   fortunately there were a few pedestrians around to help me.
   B: That’s lucky. But what were you doing?
   A: ..........................................................

4 A: ... my face was cut and he had a terrible bruise on his head.
   B: Sounds very unpleasant. How did it happen exactly?
   A: ..........................................................

55.4 Answer these questions about yourself. If possible, ask another person the same questions.

1 Have you ever broken your arm or leg?
2 Have you ever needed stitches?
3 Have you ever had concussion?
4 Have you ever been unconscious?
5 Have you ever had a blood test?
6 Have you ever been in an ambulance?
56  Clothes

A  Pocket, buttons, collar, sleeves

Note: Some of these words are plural nouns, e.g. jeans and trousers. See Unit 27.

B  Important verbs

Use this text to guess the meaning of the key words.
I got up at 7.30, had a shower, got dressed, and had breakfast. It was a cold morning so I put on my overcoat and left home about 8.20. When I got to work I took off my coat and hung it up behind the door. It was hot in the office, so I took my jacket off as well. During my lunchbreak I had a look round the shops. I saw a nice jacket in one shop and tried it on, but it didn’t fit me – it was too small and they didn’t have a bigger size.

Note: Notice the different word order with the verbs put on, take off, hang up, and try on. If you want to know the rule about this, turn to Unit 17 Phrasal verbs: grammar and style.

C  Too small and not long enough

The man is wearing a suit, but it doesn’t fit him very well: the jacket is too small (= not big enough); the trousers are too short (= not long enough).
Exercises

56.1 Finish this sentence with six different items of clothes.
I need a pair of ........................................
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................

56.2 Find a logical order for these sentences.
1. He took off his trousers.
2. He put his shoes back on.
3. He tried on the suit.
4. He went into the changing room.
5. He took it off.
6. He paid for the suit.
7. He took off his shoes.
8. He went back to the sales assistant.
9. He put his trousers on again.

56.3 What’s missing?
Write down anything that is missing in the second picture of the woman.
..........................................................
..........................................................
..........................................................

56.4 Fill the gaps with suitable words. (More than one answer may be possible in some cases.)
1. She decided to wear a ................................ and a ................................ instead of a dress.
2. I tried on a ................................ ; the jacket was fine but the ................................ were too short.
3. It was hot in the office, so I took off my jacket and ................................, and rolled up the sleeves of my .................................
4. I wanted to buy the jacket, but unfortunately the one I tried on wasn’t big ................................ and they didn’t have it in a bigger .................................
5. I also wanted a new jumper, but unfortunately the medium size was ................................ big and the small size wasn’t big .................................

56.5 Write down:
1. five things usually worn by women only; and five things worn by men and women.
2. a list of clothes you like and don’t like wearing.
3. five more items of clothing you have at home in your wardrobe / chest of drawers.
57 Shops and Shopping

A Shops and shopping
shop assistant: person who works in a shop; also called sales assistant
shop window: the window at the front of the shop
shopping centre: a place with many shops, outside or indoors
window shopping: to look round the shops but not buy anything
shopping list: a list of things to buy

I went shopping yesterday (= I went to the shops to buy food or clothes, etc.)
I did the shopping yesterday (= I bought food and household goods)

B Types of shop (and what they sell)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of shop</th>
<th>What it sells</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>department store</td>
<td>almost everything (furniture, clothes, electrical appliances, e.g. TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supermarket</td>
<td>and washing machine, toys, jewellery, etc. and sometimes food)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newsagent(s)</td>
<td>newspapers, cigarettes, sweets, stationery, e.g. writing paper, cards,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butchers</td>
<td>envelopes, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greengrocer(s)</td>
<td>fruit and vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boutique</td>
<td>fashionable clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chemist(s)</td>
<td>medicine, baby products, shampoo, soap, toothpaste, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Most other shops are just ‘+ shop’, e.g. shoe shop, record shop, camera shop, etc.

C Useful words and expressions

ASSISTANT: Can I help you?  CUSTOMER: Yes, I’m looking for (= I want) a blue jumper.
ASSISTANT: Can I help you?  CUSTOMER: No, I’m just looking, thanks. (= I don’t need help)
ASSISTANT: Can I help you?  CUSTOMER: I’m being served, thanks. (= another assistant is already serving/helping me)

ASSISTANT: What size are you looking for? (e.g. big? small? medium? 12? 14? 16?)
CUSTOMER: Where’s the changing room? (= the room where you try on clothes; also called the fitting room)

ASSISTANT: It’s down there on the right.
CUSTOMER: Yes, I’ll take this one / these. (= Yes, I want to buy this one / these)
CUSTOMER: No, I’ll leave it thanks. (= No, I don’t want to buy it/them)
CUSTOMER: Excuse me. Where do I pay for these?
ASSISTANT: Over at the cash desk/till.
CUSTOMER: And can I pay by cheque / credit card?
ASSISTANT: Yes, of course.
Exercises

57.1 Can you find a 'general' word on the opposite page to describe each group of items below?

Example: *fruit* e.g. apples, oranges and peaches

1 e.g. shoes, a blouse, a jacket
2 e.g. a sofa, an armchair, a table
3 e.g. a television, a washing machine, a food mixer
4 e.g. washing powder, soap, milk, toilet paper
5 e.g. teddy bear, plastic gun, lego
6 e.g. writing paper, envelopes

57.2 Where would you buy each of the items on the left? Choose from the shops in the box.

Now write down two more things you could buy in each shop.

57.3 What word or phrase is being defined in these sentences?

1 A shop where you can buy fashionable clothes.
2 A place with many shops, either outside or indoors.
3 A person who works in a shop.
4 The place where you can try on clothes in a shop.
5 The place where you pay for things in a shop.
6 To look round the shops without planning to buy anything.
7 The shop where you buy meat.
8 The shop where you buy medicines, baby products, shampoo, etc.

57.4 Complete this shopping dialogue.

ASSISTANT 1: Can I help you?
CUSTOMER: Yes, I'm [1] a blouse like this, but in blue.
ASSISTANT 1: I see. And what [2] are you looking for?
CUSTOMER: Uh, 14 usually.
ASSISTANT 1: Ok, I'll just go and see if we've got any.
CUSTOMER: Thank you.
ASSISTANT 2: Can I help you?
CUSTOMER: No, it's OK, I'm [3] thanks.
ASSISTANT 1: Here we are. The last one in stock.
CUSTOMER: Great. Can I try it on?
ASSISTANT 1: Yes of course. The [4] is just over there.
ASSISTANT 1: How was it?
ASSISTANT: Right. Would you like to pay over there at the [6] ?
58 Food

A Fruit
apple
orange
lemon
strawberry
peach
melon
pear
banana
grapes
pineapple
cherry

B Vegetables
potato
green beans
peas
carrot
cauliflower
pepper
cabbage
aubergine
mushrooms
courgette

C Salad
A salad is a mixture of uncooked vegetables. The main ingredient in a salad is lettuce, but it may also contain tomato, cucumber, and other things.

D Animals (meat), fish and shellfish
animal: cow
calf (= young cow)
lamb (= young sheep)
pig
meat: beef
veal
lamb
pork

Note: A person who does not eat meat is a vegetarian.
Exercises

58.1 Can you write down a vegetable and fruit:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vegetable</th>
<th>Fruit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potato</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

58.2 Find a word in the right-hand box where the underlined letter(s) are pronounced in the same way as the underlined letter(s) in a word in the left-hand box. Be careful: there are two extra words in the right-hand box which you do not need.

lettuce onion orange banana aubergine salmon
tomato melon salad chicken calf lamb cauliflower mushroom

58.3 Which is the odd one out in each group, and why?

1 pork veal salmon beef
2 salmon shrimp oyster lobster
3 lettuce aubergine tomato cucumber
4 peach onion mushroom courgette
5 chicken lamb beef mussels

58.4 Do you eat the skin (= the outside) of these fruits – always, usually, or never? Make three lists.

apples pineapples cherries grapes
pears bananas peaches mangoes
oranges lemons melons strawberries

58.5 Using words from the opposite page, complete these sentences about yourself and your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else who has done this exercise.

1 In my country ......................... is/are more common than .........................
2 In my country ......................... is/are more expensive than .........................
3 In my country a mixed salad usually contains ..........................................................
4 In my country we don’t grow ......................................................................................
5 And we don’t often eat .................................................................................................
6 Personally, I prefer ......................... to .................................................................
7 I love ......................................... but I don’t really like ........................................
8 My favourite meat is ..........................................................
Ways of cooking food
boil: in water, e.g. carrots
fry: in oil or butter above the heat, e.g. sausages
grill: under the heat, e.g. toast or meat
roast: in the oven using oil, e.g. meat
bake: in the oven without oil, e.g. cakes
Note: Food which is not cooked is raw.

Cooking steak
If you have steak you can eat it rare (= cooked very quickly and still red); medium-rare (cooked a bit longer and just red in the middle); medium (cooked a bit more and just pink); or well-done (cooked even longer and not pink at all).

Describing food
tasty: has lots of taste: a positive word; tasteless: a negative word
bland: without a strong taste; neutral in flavour, e.g. boiled rice
sweet: lots of sugar; bitter
salty: lots of salt
hot/spicy: lots of spice, e.g. curry
fresh: recently produced, e.g. fresh bread; recently picked, e.g. fresh fruit
tender: easy to cut; a positive word used to describe meat; tough
fatty: meat with a lot of fat; lean
fattening: food which makes you put on weight / get fat, e.g. cream, biscuits, etc.

Eating in restaurants
In Britain you often have three courses: a starter (e.g. soup), a main course (e.g. steak or chicken), and a dessert (e.g. strawberries or ice cream). You may also have an aperitif (= a drink before the meal, e.g. gin and tonic), and coffee after the meal. When you pay the bill (= the money for the meal; AmEng = check), you sometimes also leave a tip (= money) for the waiter if service is not included in the price. (10% is a normal tip.) If it is a popular restaurant, you may also need to book (= reserve) a table in advance (= before you go).

The menu
\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Starters}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Broccoli Soup
    \item Home-made Chicken Liver Pâté
    \item Tagliatelle with Courgettes, Cream and Bacon
  \end{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Main Courses}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Baked Salmon with Spinach
    \item Breast of Chicken in a White Wine Sauce with Mushrooms
    \item Grilled Fillet Steak in a Pepper Sauce
    \item Mushroom Risotto
  \end{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Desserts}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Chocolate Mousse
    \item Fruit Salad
    \item Ice Cream
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
Exercises

59.1 Do you often eat the following food in your country? If so, do you eat it in the same way?

Example: In Britain, we often eat ‘fish’ but not usually ‘raw fish’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Food</th>
<th>Food</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>raw fish</td>
<td>fried rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fried eggs</td>
<td>grilled sausages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baked potatoes</td>
<td>roast beef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raw spinach</td>
<td>roast peppers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fried bread</td>
<td>boiled eggs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grilled cheese</td>
<td>baked bananas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

59.2 Look at the menu on the opposite page again, and answer these questions.
1. Which starter doesn't contain vegetables?
2. Which dish contains pasta?
3. Which dish may be rare or well-done?
4. Which dish is definitely cooked in the oven?
5. Which dish will probably be quite spicy?
6. Which dish contains alcohol?
7. Which meat may be fatty or tough if you are unlucky?
8. Which dessert(s) will be quite sweet?
9. Which dessert must be very fresh?
10. You are on a diet (= you are trying to lose weight) and you do not want to have a fattening meal. Which would probably be the best dish to choose for each course?

59.3 Choose a possible adjective from the opposite page to describe each of these foods.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lemon</td>
<td>ice cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chicken</td>
<td>fillet steak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honey</td>
<td>chillies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bacon</td>
<td>avocado</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

59.4 What about restaurants in your country, and your own taste in food? Answer these questions about yourself and your country.

1. Do you normally need to book a restaurant in advance?
2. Is it common to give the waiter a tip? If so, how much?
3. Do you normally eat three courses in a restaurant? If not, how many courses do you normally have?
4. How many of these do you normally find on the table in a restaurant in your country?
   - salt yes/no
   - pepper yes/no
   - oil yes/no
   - vinegar yes/no
   - napkins yes/no
5. Generally, do you add more salt to your food when you eat in restaurants?
6. Do you like steak? If so, how do you like it cooked?
7. Would you say that food in your country is very spicy?
8. Would you say that food in your country is generally quite fattening?

If possible, ask another person the same questions.
**A  Towns**

Here are some of the things you will find in most big towns.

- a commercial centre: an area with lots of banks and company offices
- shopping centres: places with many shops, either indoors or outdoors
- car parks: places to leave many cars
- factories: buildings where you make/manufacture things, e.g. cars
- suburbs: areas outside the centre of town where people live
- libraries: places where you can borrow books
- pollution: dirty air because of smoke and petrol fumes
- night-life: places to go at night, e.g. bars, restaurants, cinemas, theatres, discos, etc.

**B  The country**

Here are some of the things you will find in the countryside.

**C  Advantages and disadvantages**

People who prefer the countryside to big towns, often say this:

**Towns:**
- are noisy
- are dirty and polluted
- are stressful
- are crowded (= full of people)
- are dangerous

**The countryside:**
- is quiet and peaceful
- is clean
- is calm and relaxing
- has lots of open space
- is safe

People who prefer big towns have a different point of view:

**In towns:**
- there are plenty (= lots) of things to do
- it's exciting
- there's a wide range of shops (= many different shops)
- there's lots of night-life, e.g. bars, cinemas, discos

**In the countryside:**
- there's nothing to do
- it's boring
- there are only a few shops
- there's no night-life
Exercises

60.1 Complete this table of opposites.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Big towns and cities</th>
<th>Village life and the countryside</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quiet and peaceful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean air</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exciting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stressful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lots of open spaces</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nothing to do in the evening</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

dangerous

Do you agree with everything in the table above? Put a tick (✓) beside each answer you do, and a (✗) beside each answer you don't. If possible compare and discuss your answers with someone else.

60.2 Organise the words in the box into three groups: things that you usually find in towns (in your country), things you usually find in the country, and things you often find in both town and country.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fields</th>
<th>factories</th>
<th>gates</th>
<th>car parks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>libraries</td>
<td>tractors</td>
<td>suburbs</td>
<td>villages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traffic</td>
<td>Town Hall</td>
<td>shopping centres</td>
<td>footpaths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollution</td>
<td>valleys</td>
<td>night-life</td>
<td>woods</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Town                      Country                      Town and country

60.3 Look at the picture on the opposite page for one minute, then cover it and complete this text based on the picture.

We opened the [1]................., said ‘hello’ to the man on the [2]................., and then followed the [3]................. across the [4]................. and down into the [5]................. We stopped and had a picnic by the river and then walked up through the [6]................. on the other side of the [7]................. A bit later we came to a [8]................. where we stopped and bought some bread.

60.4 Think of your journey to school, college or work. How many of these things do you see or pass?

a car park  factories  woods  a library  a museum  parking meters
lots of traffic  commuters  a night club  fields  suburbs  a railway station
On the road

A Road features

- traffic lights
- junction
- a bend in the road
  this road bends to the right
- pedestrian crossing
  (= where people can cross the road)
- roadworks

B An accident

Read the text and use the context and the diagram to help you with the key words.

There was a serious accident on one of the main roads into Stuttgart this morning. An old lorry (AmEng = truck) broke down in the middle of the road, and the driver couldn’t move it. It was eight o’clock, the middle of the rush hour, so it soon created a terrible traffic jam. Drivers got very angry and a man in a Mercedes tried to go round the lorry. Unfortunately another car was coming in the opposite direction. The driver braked hard and tried to stop, but he couldn’t prevent the accident – the Mercedes crashed into the front of his car. The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was badly injured and both cars were very badly damaged.

C Giving directions

Go along here, turn right into the main road, then take the first turning on your left. Keep going, and then turn left again when you get to the bank.

D Important words and phrases

- Taxis (AmEng = cab) use the road; pedestrians use the pavement (AmEng = sidewalk).
- The speed limit on motorways in Great Britain is 70 mph (120 kph).
- Most petrol stations (AmEng = gas station) in Great Britain are self-service.
- Get in the car and remember to fasten your seat belt.
- The other car was going very slowly, so I decided to overtake (= pass it on the outside lane).
Exercises

61.1 Complete the text for directions to the bank using the map to help you.
Go .................. and .................. at the junction. Then you .................. and ........ right when you .................. the ............ Then .................. again .................. Road, and the bank is .................. just .................. cinema.

61.2 Fill the gaps with the correct words.
1 Don't forget to .................. your .................. belt when you .................. the car.
2 There was a bad accident this morning. One driver died, the other driver was badly .................., and both cars were badly ..................
3 In the morning, the .................. starts at about 7 o'clock and goes on until at least 9.30. Then it starts again about 4.30 in the afternoon.
4 It was raining, so when I .................. the car didn't stop quickly enough, and I .................. into the back of the car in front.
5 The bicycle hit me just as I stepped off the .................. to cross the road.
6 The car .................., so I phoned a garage and they sent someone to repair it.
7 There was a terrible .................., and that's why it took me two hours to get home in the car.
8 I was doing about 65 mph on the inside .................. of the motorway, and suddenly a car .................. me doing about 90 mph.

61.3 Many road signs are international. Do you know or can you guess what these mean?

1 You can't .................. 4 There's only one .................. 7 traffic ..................
2 50 mph* is the .................. 5 end of .................. 8 a low ..................
3 you can't .................. 6 a car .................. 9 ..................
(*mph = miles per hour; 50 mph = 80 kph approximately)

61.4 Answer these questions about your own country.
1 Do you have a speed limit on motorways? If so, what is it?
2 How many lanes do motorways usually have?
3 Do drivers usually stop for pedestrians at pedestrian crossings?
4 Are most petrol stations self-service, or do people serve you?
A Vehicles

Vehicle is the general word for all types of road transport.
A: How did you get here?
B: I came by bus.
A: And the others?
B: Sue and John came by car.
A: And Paul?
B: He missed the bus, so he had to take a taxi.

B Catch a bus, take a taxi

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bus</th>
<th>Train</th>
<th>Plane</th>
<th>Taxi</th>
<th>Bicycle</th>
<th>Car</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>driver</td>
<td>driver</td>
<td>pilot</td>
<td>driver</td>
<td>cyclist</td>
<td>driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drives</td>
<td>drives</td>
<td>flies</td>
<td>drives</td>
<td>rides</td>
<td>drives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(£) fare</td>
<td>fare</td>
<td>air fare</td>
<td>fare</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch/take</td>
<td>catch/take</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>go on (my)</td>
<td>go by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on/off</td>
<td>get on/off</td>
<td>get on/off</td>
<td>get in/out</td>
<td>get on/off</td>
<td>get in/out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus station</td>
<td>railway station</td>
<td>airport</td>
<td>taxi rank</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C Railway stations

You may hear these announcements.

The train now arriving at platform 3 is the 8.48 to London Paddington, calling at Swindon and Reading. Passengers for Didcot change (= change trains) at Swindon.
We apologise to passengers for the late arrival of the 8.52 to Oxford.
This train will now arrive at platform 6 in approximately 20 minutes.
The next train due to (= timetabled to) arrive at platform 4 is the 9.06 to Birmingham.

D Buses

Sometimes buses are not very punctual (= they don’t arrive at the correct time). Where I live buses should run (= come) every ten minutes, but sometimes I wait at the bus stop for half an hour with a long queue (AmEng = line) of people, and then three buses come together, and they’re all full up (= full of people, and no more people can get on). On other occasions the bus is early and I miss it (= I don’t catch it. NOT I lost the bus).
Exercises

62.1 Cross out the incorrect word in these sentences.
1. You mustn’t ride/drive a motorbike without a crash helmet.
2. She told him to get in / get on the car and fasten his seat belt.
3. Bus fares/tickets are getting more expensive.
4. Trains to the airport travel/run every half hour.
5. The pilot couldn’t drive/fly the plane in such bad weather.
6. Have a look at the train schedule/timetable to find out when the next one arrives.
7. We were late, so we had to take/catch a taxi.
8. I left my house a bit late and I lost/missed the bus.

62.2 Write down two different words that can combine with each of the words below.
Example: miss ...the bus...
...the train...

1. fare
2. get on
3. station
4. driver
5. get in

62.3 Identify these means of transport without looking at the opposite page.

1. 2. 3. 4. 5.

62.4 Fill the gaps with the correct word.
1. Our train leaves from ................. 7.
2. I waited at the ................. for ten minutes, and then two buses arrived.
3. I couldn’t get on the first bus because it was .................
4. The train was half an hour late. I think the reason for the late ................. was bad weather.
5. Buses are not very ................. Sometimes they come every five minutes, then other times you have to wait for forty minutes.
6. When I got to the bus stop there was a long ................. of people.
7. The flight was fine but we had a terrible ................. from the airport to our hotel.
8. I think the next train is ................. to arrive in about ten minutes.

62.5 Are these statements true or false in your experience?
1. Trains are more reliable than buses.
2. Train fares are more expensive than bus fares.
3. Train journeys are more interesting than bus journeys.
4. Railway stations are nicer places than bus stations.
5. You get to the place you are going faster by taxi than by car.
63 Work: duties, conditions and pay

A What do you do?

People may ask you about your job. They can ask and you can answer in different ways:

What do you do? I'm (+ job) e.g. a banker / an engineer / a teacher / a builder
What's your job? I work in (+ place or general area) e.g. a bank / marketing
What do you do for a living? I work for (+ name of company) e.g. Union Bank, ICI, Fiat

Note: 'Work' is usually an uncountable noun, so you cannot say 'a work'. If you want to use the indefinite article you must say 'a job', e.g. She hasn't got a job at the moment.

B What does that involve? (= What do you do in your job?)

When people ask you to explain your work/job, they may want to know your main responsibilities (= your duties / what you have to do), or something about your daily routine (= what you do every day/week). They can ask like this: What does that (i.e. your job) involve?

Main responsibilities
I'm in charge of (= responsible for) all deliveries out of the factory.
I have to deal with any complaints (= take all necessary action if there are complaints).
I run the coffee bar and restaurant in the museum (= I am in control of it / I manage it).

Note: We often use responsible for / in charge of for part of something, e.g. a department or some of the workers; and run for control of all of something, e.g. a company or a shop.

Daily duties/routines
I have to go to / attend (fmI) a lot of meetings.
I visit/see/meet clients (= people I do business with or for).
I advise clients (= give them help and my opinion).
It involves doing quite a lot of paperwork (a general word we use for routine work that involves paper e.g. writing letters, filling in forms, etc.). Note the -ing form after involve.

C Pay

Most workers are paid (= receive money) every month and this pay goes directly into their bank account. It is called a salary. We can express the same idea using the verb to earn:

My salary is $60,000 a year. (= I earn $60,000 a year.)

With many jobs you get (= receive) holiday pay and sick pay (when you are ill). If you want to ask about holidays, you can say:

How much holiday do you get? or How many weeks' holiday do you get?

The total amount of money you receive in a year is called your income. This could be your salary from one job, or the salary from two different jobs you have. And on this income you have to pay part to the government - called income tax.

D Working hours

For many people in Britain, these are 8.30-9.00 a.m. to 5.00-5.30 p.m. Consequently people often talk about a nine-to-five job (= regular working hours). Some people have flexi-time (= they can start an hour or so earlier or finish later); and some have to do shiftwork (= working at different times, e.g. days one week and nights the next week). Some people also work overtime (= work extra hours). Some people are paid to do/work overtime, others are not paid.
Exercises

63.1 Match the verbs on the left with the nouns or phrases on the right. Use each word once only.

1. earn 
2. work 
3. pay 
4. go to 
5. deal with 
6. run 

overtime 
meetings 
a shop 
clients 
£500 
income tax

63.2 Starting with the words you are given, rewrite each of these sentences using vocabulary from the opposite page. The basic meaning must stay the same.

Example: I'm a banker.
I work in banking.

1. What do you do?
What's
2. I earn $50,000 dollars.
My
3. I get £20,000 from my teaching job and another £10,000 from writing.
My total
4. I am a chemist.
I work for
5. In my job I have to look after and maintain all the computers in the building.
My job involves
6. I'm responsible for one of the smaller departments.
I'm in

63.3 This is part of a conversation with a teacher about her job. Can you supply the missing questions?

A: ...........................................?
B: I usually start at nine and finish at four.
A: ...........................................?
B: Yes a bit. On certain courses I work until five o'clock, and then I get paid extra.
A: ...........................................?
B: Twelve weeks. That's one of the good things about being a teacher.
A: ...........................................?
B: No we don't, I'm afraid. That's one of the disadvantages of being a teacher. But I suppose money isn't everything.

63.4 Can you answer these general knowledge questions about work?

1. What are normal working hours for most office jobs in your country?
2. Can you name three jobs that get very high salaries in your country?
3. When you start paying income tax in your country, what is the minimum amount you have to pay?
4. What jobs often involve shiftwork? (Give at least two examples.)
5. Is flexi-time common in your company or your country?

63.5 Think about your own job. How many of the things on the opposite page do you do? How is your work different? Can you explain your responsibilities and daily duties in English?
A The medical profession

These people treat (= give medical treatment and try to solve a medical problem) and look after (= care for / take care of) others: doctor, nurse, surgeon (= a specialist doctor who works in a hospital and operates on people), dentist, and vet (= animal doctor). The word ‘vet’ is a short form for ‘veterinary surgeon’.

B Manual jobs

These are jobs where you work with your hands, and all the examples below are skilled jobs (= they need a lot of training).

- bricklayer (builds walls)
- carpenter (makes things using wood)
- plumber (fits and repairs water pipes, bathrooms, etc.)
- electrician (fits and repairs electrical things)
- mechanic (repairs cars)

C Professional people

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Job</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>architect</td>
<td>designs buildings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lawyer</td>
<td>represents people with legal problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engineer</td>
<td>plans the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accountant</td>
<td>controls the financial situation of people and companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>university lecturer</td>
<td>teaches in a university</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broker (stock market)</td>
<td>buys and sells stocks and shares</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D The armed forces and the emergency services

- soldier (in the army)
- sailor (in the navy)
- pilot (in the air force)
- police officer (in the police force)
- firefighter (in the fire brigade)
Exercises

64.1 Write down at least one job from the opposite page that would probably be impossible for these people.
1 Someone who didn’t go to university.
2 Someone with very bad eyesight (= cannot see very well).
3 Someone who is always seasick on a boat.
4 Someone who understands nothing about cars.
5 Someone who will not work in the evening or at weekends.
6 Someone who is afraid of dogs.
7 Someone who is afraid of heights and high places.
8 Someone who is terrible at numbers and figures.
9 Someone who can’t stand the sight of blood.
10 Someone who is a pacifist, who is anti-war.

64.2 Complete these definitions.
1 An architect ... designs buildings ...
2 A university lecturer
3 An accountant
4 A vet
5 A lawyer
6 An engineer
7 A bricklayer
8 A stock broker
9 A mechanic
10 A surgeon

64.3 Respond to the statements below, as in the example.
Example: A: He’s a policeman.
B: ... Really? When did he join the police force?
1 A: He’s a soldier.
B: ...................................................?
2 A: He’s a sailor.
B: ...................................................?
3 A: He’s a fighter pilot.
B: ...................................................?
4 A: He’s a firefighter.
B: ...................................................?

64.4 You have just bought a piece of land and you are planning to build a house on it. Write down at least six people from the opposite page that you may need to help you. What would you need their help for?
Example: a bricklayer to build the walls

64.5 Write a list of friends, relatives and neighbours (just choose people who have jobs). Can you write down what each person does? Use a bilingual dictionary to help you if necessary.
Example: My uncle Jim is an engineer. His wife is an accountant.
The career ladder

A Getting a job

When Paul left school he applied for (= wrote an official request for) a job in the accounts department of a local engineering company. They gave him a job as a trainee (= a very junior person in a company). He didn’t earn very much but they gave him a lot of training (= organised help and advice with learning the job), and sent him on training courses.

Note: Training is an uncountable noun, so you cannot say ‘a training’. You can only talk about training (in general), or a training course (if you want to refer to just one). Here you can use the verbs do or go on: I did / went on several training courses last year.

B Moving up

Paul worked hard at the company and his prospects (= future possibilities in the job) looked good. After his first year he got a good pay rise (= more money), and after two years he was promoted (= given a higher position with more money and responsibility). After six years he was in charge of (= responsible for / the boss of) the accounts department with five other employees (= workers in the company) under him (= under his responsibility/authority).

C Leaving the company

By the time Paul was 30, however, he decided he wanted a fresh challenge (= a new exciting situation). He was keen to work abroad, so he resigned from his company (= officially told the company he was leaving his job; you can also say ‘he quit the company’) and started looking for a new job with a bigger company. After a couple of months he managed to find a job with an international company which involved (= included) a lot of foreign travel. He was very excited about the new job and at first he really enjoyed the travelling, but ...

D Hard times

After about six months, Paul started to dislike the constant moving around, and after a year he hated it; he hated living in hotels, and he never really made any friends in the new company. Unfortunately his work was not satisfactory either and finally he was sacked (= told to leave the company / dismissed / given the sack) a year later.

After that, Paul found things much more difficult. He was unemployed (= out of work / without a job) for over a year. He had to sell his car and move out of his new house. Things were looking bad and in the end Paul had to accept a part-time job (= working only some of the day or some of the week) on a fruit and vegetable stall in a market.

E Happier times

To his surprise, Paul loved the market. He made lots of friends and enjoyed working out in the open air. After two years, he took over (= took control of) the stall. Two years later he opened a second stall, and after ten years he had fifteen stalls. Last year Paul retired (= stopped working completely) at the age of 55, a very rich man.
Exercises

65.1 Write a single word synonym for each of these words/phrases.
1 given the sack = ........................................
2 out of work = ...........................................
3 left the company = ......................................
4 was given a better position in the company = ........................................
5 future possibilities in a job = ...........................................
6 stopped working for ever = ...........................................
7 workers in a company = ..............................................

65.2 Find the logical answer on the right for each of the questions on the left.
1 Why did they sack him? a Because he was nearly 65.
2 Why did they promote him? b Because he was late for work every day.
3 Why did he apply for the job? c Because he needed more training.
4 Why did he retire? d Because he was out of work.
5 Why did he resign? e Because he was the best person in the department.
6 Why did he go on the course? f Because he didn't like his boss.

65.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable word or phrase.
1 I don't want a full-time job. I'd prefer to work ......................
2 She'd like to go on another training ......................
3 I'm bored in my job. I need a fresh ......................
4 He works on a stall in the ......................
5 At the end of this year we should get a good pay ......................
6 She's got more than a hundred workers under ......................
7 I didn't know he was the new manager. When did he take ......................?
8 It's a boring job and the pay is awful. Why did he ......................?

65.4 Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>General noun</th>
<th>Personal noun(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>promote</td>
<td>.....................</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employ</td>
<td>.....................</td>
<td>.....................</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resign</td>
<td>.....................</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retire</td>
<td>.....................</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>train</td>
<td>.....................</td>
<td>.....................</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

65.5 Have you got a job in a company? If so, answer these questions as quickly as you can.
1 What does your job involve?
2 Are you responsible for anything or anyone?
3 Have you had much training from the company?
4 Have the company sent you on any training courses?
5 Have you been promoted since you started in the company?
6 Do you normally get a good pay rise at the end of each year?
7 How do you feel about your future prospects in the company?
8 Are you happy in the job or do you feel it is time for a fresh challenge in another company?

If possible, ask another person the same questions.
In the office and in the factory

A The office

B Office work

Brenda works for a company which produces furniture. She works in an office, which is just opposite the factory where the furniture is made. This is how she spends her day:

She works at a computer most of the time, where she writes letters and reports.
She answers phone calls, mostly from retailers. (= shops selling the factory’s furniture)
She makes phone calls to retailers, and the factory making the furniture.
She sends invoices to customers. (= paper showing products sold and the money to pay)
She shows visitors around the factory.
She does general paperwork, e.g. filing reports, writing memos, answering letters.
She arranges meetings for her boss and other managers in the company.

C The ‘shop floor’ of the factory

This is where products are manufactured (= made). Modern factories have fewer workers than in the past – this is because of automation (= machines do most of the work), and most factories use an assembly line (= an arrangement in which each worker makes a part of the product and then passes it on to the next person or machine). On an assembly line, workers fit/assemble the different parts, and supervisors (= people in charge/control) check/inspect/examine each stage to make sure the product meets the required standard (= is good enough).

D Finished goods

Goods (pl) is the general word used for things that are made to be sold. When the product, e.g. a radio, is finished, it is packaged (= put in plastic and then in a box) and stored (= kept) in a warehouse. When a customer, e.g. an electrical shop, orders some of these goods, they are delivered to the shop (= taken to the shop) using road or rail.
Exercises

66.1 Write down three nouns that could follow each of these verbs. You can use the same noun more than once. Not all of them are on the left-hand page.

1 write .......................... 3 make ................................
.......................... ................................
2 send .......................... 4 arrange ...........................
.......................... ................................

66.2 Fill the gaps with the correct word to form a compound noun in each case.

1 I told him to put the details on the notice
2 She has to check the goods when they come off the assembly
3 I'm sure I took the reports out of the filing and put them in my brief
4 It's a very boring job and I spend most of my time doing general paper
5 I threw all that stuff in the wastepaper

66.3 What words from the opposite page are being defined here?

1 The place where you store finished products before they are sold.
2 The process of using machines to do work that used to be done by men and women.
3 A plural noun for things that are made to be sold.
4 A thing you often hang on the wall, which tells you the date.
5 A book where you often write down all your appointments and things you have to do.
6 A piece of paper which shows the products that a customer bought and the money they have to pay.
7 A person or business that sells goods to the public.
8 A part of a desk where you often keep pens, paper, notes, etc.

66.4 Replace the underlined verb using a different verb with the same meaning (in this context).

1 This particular machine is made in Germany.
2 I help them to assemble the different parts.
3 The supervisor always inspects our work carefully
4 When the books are printed they are kept in the warehouse.
5 The factory said they'll be able to take the furniture to the shops next Monday.

66.5 Have you got a job? If so, how many of these statements are true for you in your job? (If you haven't got a job, how many of these things would you like to do?)

1 I work at a computer a lot of the time.
2 I do quite a lot of general paperwork.
3 I make a lot of phone calls.
4 I send faxes occasionally.
5 I show people around my workplace.
6 I arrange meetings.
7 I attend (= go to) quite a lot of meetings.
8 I have to write letters and reports.
9 I go to conferences.

English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate) 137
A **Banks and businesses**

Most businesses need to borrow money to finance (= pay for) investments (= things they need to buy in order to help the company, e.g. machines). The money they borrow from the bank is called a loan, and on this loan they have to pay interest, e.g. if you borrow £1,000 and the interest rate is 10%, then you have to pay back £1,000, plus £100 in interest.

B **Businesses and profit**

One of the main aims/objectives (= the things that you hope to do/achieve) of a company is to make a profit (= earn/receive more money than it spends) (= make a loss). If a company does not make a profit or a loss, it breaks even.

Most companies are happy if they can break even in their first year of business.

Companies receive money from selling their products – this money is called the turnover. The money that they spend is called the expenditure (fml). They spend money on these things: raw materials (= materials in their natural state used to make something else, e.g. coal and oil are important raw materials used to make plastics); labour (= employees); overheads (= necessary costs for a company, e.g. rent for buildings, electricity, telephone).

C **Rise and fall**

Business people often need to talk about the movement of sales, prices, interest rates, profit and loss, etc. Here are some of the words used to describe these trends (= movements):

- rise / go up / increase
- rise slowly (also gradually)
- rise sharply
- fall / go down
- fall slowly
- go down sharply

*Note: rise, increase, and fall are also used as nouns: a slow rise in interest rates, a steady increase in sales, a sharp fall in profits, a dramatic (= sharp) rise in inflation. We can also use be up/down: prices are up by 10%; profits are down by £2m.*

D **Businesses and the economy**

In order to grow/expand (= get bigger) and thrive/prosper (= do well / be successful), many companies want or need the following:

- low inflation, so prices do not go up
- low interest rates, so the company can borrow money without paying a lot of interest
- economic and political stability (= things remain steady and stable and there are no sudden changes in the economic and political situation)
- a healthy/strong economy (= in good condition), and not an economy in recession (= in a period of reduced and slow business activity)
- tax cuts (= tax reductions / lower taxes), so they can keep more of their profit. This often depends on government expenditure, e.g. The government will not be able to reduce taxes if public expenditure continues to rise.
Exercises

67.1 What single word or phrase is being defined in each of these sentences?

1 Money you borrow from a bank for your business.
2 What you must pay the bank if you borrow money.
3 The continuous increase in the price of things.
4 The things you hope to do/achieve within a period of time.
5 When a company does not make a profit or a loss.
6 When an economy is in a period of reduced and slow business activity.

67.2 Replace the underlined word(s) in each sentence with another word that has the same meaning.

1 There has been a slow rise in sales.
2 This comes after a dramatic fall last year.
3 Fortunately the company is doing well now.
4 And it's growing very quickly.
5 This is one of their main objectives.
6 Profits have risen considerably.

67.3 Look at the graph and complete the sentences on the left with one word for each gap.

1 In 1993 sales ......................
2 In the following year they ...................... ......................
3 In 1995 there was a ...................... ...................... in sales.
4 In 1996 business improved and there was a ...................... ......................
5 And in 1997 sales ...................... ......................
6 In the five-year period sales ...................... by 40,000.

67.4 Fill the gaps to form compound words or common phrases.

1 ...................... expenditure  3 tax ......................  5 raw ......................
2 ...................... stability  4 ...................... rate  6 profit and ......................

67.5 Can you answer these questions about your own country?

1 What is the current inflation rate?
2 If you borrowed $10,000 from your bank, what would the interest rate be approximately?
3 What is the state of the economy at the moment? Is it strong? Is it in recession?
4 Do you think businesses are optimistic about the future?
5 Has the government reduced company taxes or personal taxes in the last twelve months?
6 Has public expenditure risen or fallen in the last twelve months?
Sales and marketing

A What is marketing?

People talk about the marketing mix. This consists of (= it is formed from and includes):
choosing the right product (= what a company produces/makes or offers)
selling it at the right price (= what it costs to the buyer/consumer)
using the right kind of promotion (= the ways to make the product popular and well-known; this includes advertising.)
making it available in the right place (= where you sell the product and how it reaches the consumer; also known as distribution)

This ‘mix’ is often referred to as the four Ps, and marketing people have the job of matching these things to the needs of consumers (= the people who buy and use products). People who buy the products of a particular company are that company’s customers/clients.

B ‘Sales’ and ‘market’

There are a number of words which combine with sales and market to form compound nouns and word partnerships which are very common in marketing.
sales figures: the amount you have sold
sales target: the amount you would like to sell in a future period
sales forecast: the amount you think you will sell in a future period, e.g. next year
sales representative: a person who sells a company’s products; abbreviated to sales rep
sales/marketing manager: the person who runs the sales/marketing department
market research: collecting and studying information about what people want and need
market share: the % of a market that a company has, e.g. a 20% market share
market leader: the company or product with the biggest market share

C Competition

Ford Motors is the market leader in the UK car industry. Its main competitors (= the most important companies in the same market) are Vauxhall and Rover, and it has had to work very hard in recent years to maintain its market share. Every time a competitor launches a new product (= introduces a new car onto the market), it is harder for Ford to stay in front.

D A company’s image

The image of a product/company (= the picture or idea that people have of the product/company) is very important in sales and marketing. Some companies want a fashionable image (= modern and up-to-date), others do not. For example:

mass-produced (= made in large numbers), reliable (= you can trust it), good value (= good for the money) functional but boring.
young; exciting, glamorous (= exciting + attractive); often fashionable, dangerous; not very practical.
high quality (= high standard/very good), luxury (= expensive and giving great comfort), high status/prestige (= important; driven by important people).
Exercises

68.1 The ‘marketing mix’ consists of the four Ps. Can you remember what they are? Write them down and then check on the opposite page.

68.2 See how many different compound words and word partnerships you can form from the words in the box (you can use a word more than once), then complete the definitions below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sales</th>
<th>market</th>
<th>manager</th>
<th>share</th>
<th>figures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>marketing</td>
<td>leader</td>
<td>research</td>
<td>department</td>
<td>forecast</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 A sales ......................... is what you think you are going to sell during a future period.
2 The marketing ..................... will be responsible for all the activities in the marketing .................
3 Sales ......................... tell you how much you have sold of a product.
4 The market ......................... is the company with the largest market ................. in a particular market.
5 Market ......................... gives you information about what people want, need and buy.

68.3 What knowledge is necessary to be a good sales rep? Complete this text and then try to add a further sentence of your own.

First of all a good sales [1].......................... needs to have an excellent knowledge of their company’s [2].......................... Secondly, he or she needs to know all about the [3].......................... of their main [4].......................... Thirdly, a sales representative should be familiar with the needs of [5].......................... in their particular market, and should obviously be very familiar with the needs of their company’s most important [6]..........................

68.4 Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>...............</td>
<td>exciting</td>
<td>prestige</td>
<td>...............</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...............</td>
<td>glamorous</td>
<td>luxury</td>
<td>.......... reliable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>competition</td>
<td>...............</td>
<td>..........</td>
<td>dangerous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fashion</td>
<td>...............</td>
<td>..........</td>
<td>..........</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

68.5 Which nouns or adjectives from the last exercise (or any others from section D on the opposite page), do you associate with these companies and products?

Rolex ........................................ Benetton ........................................
Coca Cola ..................................... Sony ........................................
Ferrari ....................................... Levis ........................................
Swatch ........................................ mobile phones ........................................

68.6 Can you answer these questions about your own country? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 Which company is the market leader in the motor car industry in your country?
2 Do you know its approximate market share?
3 Which companies are its main competitors?
4 Write down the names of at least two cars that have been launched in the last six months.
Hobbies

Hobbies are activities that we do in our spare time (= free time).

A Things people play
cards board games chess guitar saxophone
musical instruments

Note: People join clubs (= become members of clubs) where they can play cards and chess.

B Things people collect
stamps coins antiques

C Outdoor activities
hiking camping rock climbing hunting jogging

With these hobbies we can use two different verbs, go and do:
We often go camping in the summer. or I do a bit of / a lot of rock climbing in the summer.

D Creative hobbies
Caroline makes her own clothes. (= she makes clothes for herself; she doesn’t buy them)
Barbara likes photography.
Brigit is mad about (= really likes) DIY. (DIY = do-it-yourself)

Note: When we start a hobby for the first time we often use the phrasal verb take up, and when we stop doing the hobby for the final time, we often use the phrasal verb give up.
I took up golf when I was fifteen, but I gave it up last year.
Exercises

69.1 Without looking at the opposite page, write down:
1 three things that people often play
2 three things that people often collect
3 five outdoor hobbies which include some physical exercise

69.2 Here are some people talking about their hobbies. Can you guess what the hobby is in each case?
1 I usually use colour, but sometimes you get a better effect with black and white. It really depends on the subject.
2 I really enjoy going round the shops and markets looking for a bargain.
3 I try to practise every day, but sometimes it's difficult because I don't like to disturb my neighbours too much. And one neighbour gets very angry if I play the same thing over and over again.
4 The great thing is you can do it when you like. I usually do it three or four times a week – either early in the morning, or after school. I only go for about 25 minutes but it really keeps me fit.
5 Obviously it saves me a lot of money; and in any case, I hate buying things in boutiques because so many things are badly made.
6 I joined a club because I wanted to get better, and I now play twice a week in the evenings. It has helped me a lot and I have a much better memory for all the different moves and strategies.
7 I think this is a very common hobby for people like me, who have a house but don't have much money. That's why I started, but now I think I do a better job than many professionals.

69.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable verb.
1 How often do you .................. jogging?
2 She .................. hiking because she wanted to get more exercise. Unfortunately, she didn't like it and she .................. it .................. about six months later.
3 She has always .................. her own clothes; it's much cheaper than buying them.
4 He .................. old coins.
5 I .................. quite a lot of rock climbing when I'm on holiday.
6 I learnt to .................. the piano when I was at school.
7 I wanted to improve my chess, so I .................. a chess club.
8 I don't really .................. anything in my spare time.

69.4 Answer these questions.
1 Have you got a hobby? If so, what is it?
2 How long have you had this hobby?
3 Is it an expensive hobby?
4 Why do you like it?
5 How much time do you spend on your hobby?
6 Is it a common hobby in your country?
7 Write down three other common hobbies in your country.

If possible, ask another person these questions.
70 Sport 1: games, people, and places

In English you normally play a game but do a lot of / a bit of sport:
In the winter I do quite a lot of skiing; in the summer I play tennis and cricket.

**Ball games and equipment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sport</th>
<th>Equipment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>football (AmEng = soccer)</td>
<td>football, boots, training shoes, running shoes or spikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basketball</td>
<td>golf, golf clubs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tennis</td>
<td>table tennis, racket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>squash</td>
<td>badminton, badminton racquets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volleyball</td>
<td>baseball, baseball bats</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For most ball games you need boots or training shoes (trainers). For tennis, squash and badminton you need a racket. For baseball and table tennis you need a bat. For golf you need clubs. In tennis, volleyball and badminton there is a net across the middle of the court. There is also a net around each goal in football.

**Things you can do with a ball**

- throw it
- head it
- pass it
- hit it
- catch it
- kick it

**Places and people**

The playing area for football, rugby, hockey and cricket is called a pitch; for tennis, volleyball, basketball, squash and badminton it is a court; for golf it is a course.

*Note:* When you describe the playing area for football and the area around for the crowd (= the people who watch, also called spectators), it is called a stadium, e.g. Wembley Stadium.

*Players:* Some games are played by individuals, others are team games. In a team, one player is the captain, and there is a manager (e.g. in football) or a coach (e.g. in basketball).

*Officials:* Football, rugby and hockey have a referee but tennis, cricket and baseball have an umpire. In football the referee has a whistle to control the game and two linesmen. In tennis there are line judges to decide if the ball is ‘in’ or ‘out’.

**Other sports**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Equipment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>athletics</td>
<td>track</td>
<td>vest, shorts, running shoes or spikes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motor racing</td>
<td>track</td>
<td>crash helmet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>pool</td>
<td>swimming costume (women); trunks (men)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boxing</td>
<td>ring</td>
<td>vest, shorts, gloves, boots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skiing</td>
<td>slopes (piste)</td>
<td>sticks, ski suit, ski boots</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Exercises

70.1 Write down six things you can do with a ball. Cover the opposite page first.

…………… it …………… it …………… it
…………… it …………… it …………… it

70.2 Write down:
1 five games where you can hit the ball (with various kinds of equipment).
2 four games where you can pass the ball.
3 three games where you can catch the ball.
4 two games where you can kick the ball.
5 one game where you can head the ball.

70.3 Organise these words and put them in the correct columns below? (You can put a word in more than one column if you wish.)

swimming gloves crash helmet course football racket track ring boots pool motor racing clubs tennis net court golf pitch track trunks boxing goals costume shorts whistle vest

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sport</th>
<th>Place</th>
<th>Equipment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

70.4 True or false? If false, correct the sentence to make it true.
1 The people who watch a football match are the audience.
2 The official who gives the score in tennis is the umpire.
3 Athletes wear shorts.
4 You need a stick to play hockey.
5 Boxers wear gloves.
6 Tennis is played on a pitch.
7 The referee in football has a whistle.
8 Women wear trunks for swimming.

70.5 Answer these questions. If possible, ask a friend the same questions.
1 Are there any games or sports on the opposite page that you watch but don’t play? If so, what are they and where do you watch them?
2 Are there any games or sports on the opposite page you play/do yourself? If so, which?
3 Are there any that you are good at?
4 Are there any that you hate?
5 Are there any that are not played much in your country?
6 Which game or sport is the most popular in your country?
7 Which game or sport on the opposite page is the most dangerous in your opinion?
8 Which game or sport requires the most strength?
9 Which one has the biggest crowds?
10 Can you write down at least three more games/sports not included opposite.
Notice how these key words are used:

Spain beat Switzerland 3–2. (= Switzerland lost to Spain 3–2) In other words:
Spain won the match. (= Switzerland lost the match)
Spain defeated Switzerland. (= Switzerland were defeated by Spain)
Spain were the winners. (= Switzerland were the losers)

If both teams or players have the same score (= number of goals or points), it is a draw (e.g. 2–2 is a draw). We can also use draw as a verb, e.g. we drew yesterday's match/game 2–2.

Note: A match is used for an organised game: We had a game of football with a few friends in the park, but we've got an important match against a very good team next week.

When the game is still in progress, we often use the verb lead to describe the position of the teams and players, or latest to describe the score:

HALF-TIME SCORE: SPAIN 2 SWITZERLAND 1
At half-time, Spain are leading Switzerland two–one. (= the latest score is two–one to Spain)
Sampras is leading three–two in the first set. (= the latest score is three–two to Sampras)

In most games you score goals (e.g. football, hockey) or points (e.g. table tennis, basketball). At the end of the game there is a result (= players/teams win, lose, or draw).
However, the scoring system – and the way we describe it – is different from game to game.

**Football**
- Spain 0–0 Italy (we say nil–nil)
- Spain 1–0 Italy (one-nil to Spain)
- Spain 1–1 Italy (one–all)
- Spain 1–2 Italy (two–one to Italy)
- Spain 2–2 Italy (two–all)

If the final score is 2–2 in a cup match, you may have to play extra time. And if the score is still 2–2 at the end of extra time, there is a penalty shoot-out.

**Tennis**
- 15–0 (fifteen–love)
- 30–0 (thirty–love)
- 30–30 (thirty–all)
- 40–40 (deuce) [pronounced like ‘juice’]
- Advantage X
- Game X

Game and set to X (e.g. 6–3 or 7–5)
If the score reaches 6–6 you have a tie-break to decide the set.

In many sports, players and teams play every week in a league (the player/team that wins the most games in a season is the winner of the league championship). In most sports, there is also a cup competition, which is usually a knock-out competition.
Exercises

These exercises also revise some vocabulary from the previous unit.

71.1 Complete the table with the correct forms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past tense</th>
<th>Past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>lose</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>lead</td>
<td>catch</td>
<td>draw</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

71.2 How do we say these scores?
1 Football: 0–0  2–1  4–4
2 Tennis: 15–0  40–30  40–40

71.3 Fill the gaps in these texts with suitable words or phrases.
In the World Cup Final of 1994, Brazil [9]................. Italy 3–2 in a [10]................. shoot-out. After ninety minutes the [3]................. was 0–0; and it remained the same after thirty minutes of [9]................., but then Italy [9]................. 3–2 in the penalty shoot-out after Baresi and Baggio both missed. This was the fourth time that Brazil had [9]................. the World Cup.

Ivanisevic [7]................. to Sampras in the second round. He [9]................. the first [9]................. 6–4, but then [11]................. the second [11]................. on a [12]................. After that, Sampras dominated the rest of the [11]................. and won easily. The final [14]................. was 4–6, 7–6, 6–1, 6–2.

71.4 True or false? Check your answers by looking back at this unit and the previous unit.
1 Brazil won the football World Cup in 1994.
2 Football has an umpire.
3 A set in tennis is always decided on a tie-break.
4 If two teams have the same score at the end of the game, it is a draw.
5 Golf is played on a course.
6 If someone gives you the latest score, the game has finished.
7 Sticks are used in skiing and hockey.
8 In a knock-out competition, you can lose one or two games but still win the competition.

71.5 Which sport is being described in each sentence? (The underlined words are key words and you can look them up to increase your vocabulary in different sports.)
1 The referee gave the try although many people thought it was a forward pass.
2 He scored the winner with a beautiful free kick from just outside the penalty area.
3 He served fifteen aces and not one double fault.
4 The coach called a time out with just 45 seconds left and two points between the teams.
5 He crashed into the car in front with just two laps remaining.
6 First he was booked (= the yellow card) for a bad tackle, and then he handled the ball inside the penalty area, so the referee had to send him off (= the red card).
7 In the 200 metres freestyle, he overtook the Russian on the final length to win the race.
8 She sprinted away from the rest of the field on the final lap and won easily.
Cinema and theatre

A Theatre

At the theatre you can see plays, e.g. *Hamlet* by Shakespeare, or musicals, e.g. *Phantom of the Opera* by Andrew Lloyd Webber. In a play the cast (= the total number of actors) is usually quite small, but musicals often have a very large cast.

One difference between the theatre and cinema is that you usually book (= reserve) tickets in advance (= some time before the actual performance) if you are going to the theatre. Another difference is that the audience (= the people watching the play/musical) clap at the end of the performance. This does not usually happen (in Britain) at the end of a film.

B Cinema

Plays are performed on stage, films are shown on screen. In your country, films in English are either shown with subtitles (= there is a translation across the bottom of the screen), or they are dubbed (= the English is removed and replaced by actors speaking in your own language).

Films are set (= take place) in many different periods and places, e.g. *Room with a View* is set in the early part of the 20th century; *Blade Runner* is set in the future. And when people talk about films, they often talk about the director, e.g. Spielberg, Bertolucci; and the stars, the most important actors and actresses, e.g. Tom Hanks and Jodie Foster.

C Types of film

- western: a film about America in the 19th century; often with cowboys and indians
- war film, e.g. *Born on the 4th of July*
- horror film, e.g. *Dracula; Frankenstein*
- science fiction film: about the future
- action film, e.g. *Indiana Jones*
- comedy: e.g. *Indiana Jones*
- thriller: an exciting story often about a crime

D Describing plays and films

Journalists write articles in which they give their opinion of new films and plays. They are called critics, and their articles are called reviews. These are some words they may use:

- moving: producing strong emotions, often of sadness; a positive word
- violent: includes lots of scenes with fighting and death
- powerful: has a big effect on our emotions
- gripping: exciting and very interesting
- good fun: used to describe a film that may not be very serious or important but is enjoyable
- slow: boring
## Exercises

### 72.1
Look at the picture of your visit to the theatre and answer these questions.

1. Did you sit in the stalls or circle?
2. Which row were you in?
3. Were you next to an aisle?
4. Did you have a good view of the stage?

### 72.2
What word or phrase is being defined?

1. A play or film in which part of the story is sung to music.
2. The total number of actors in a play or film.
3. The people who watch a play at the theatre.
4. What these people do with their hands at the end of a play.
5. The person who makes a film.
6. Journalists who write articles about films and plays.
7. The name of the articles they write.
8. The translation of the story of a film across the bottom of the screen.
9. To reserve tickets before the performance.
10. The most important actors or actresses in a film.

### 72.3
Have you seen these famous films made in English over the last twenty years? If so, try to complete the rest of the table using words from the opposite page. Then write in the titles of three more films you have seen and complete the rest of the table for it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Film</th>
<th>Type of film</th>
<th>Subtitles or dubbed?</th>
<th>Description of film (adjectives)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Dirty Harry with Clint Eastwood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Blade Runner with Harrison Ford</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Four Weddings and a Funeral with Hugh Grant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 Schindler’s List with Liam Neeson</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Dances with Wolves with Kevin Costner</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Music, art and literature

A Forms and people

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Forms</th>
<th>Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Music</td>
<td>composer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pop/rock</td>
<td>songwriter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Art</td>
<td>painter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sculpture</td>
<td>sculptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literature</td>
<td>novelist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the novel</td>
<td>artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short stories</td>
<td>short story writer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poetry</td>
<td>poet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plays</td>
<td>dramatist/playwright</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B Music

Classical music: e.g. Beethoven’s piano concertos, Schubert’s symphonies. Beethoven and Schubert are both composers (= people who write classical music) and most of their music is played by an orchestra (= large group of musicians including violins, cellos, etc.) which is led by a conductor, e.g. Georg Solti or Loren Maazel, as leader.

Opera (= a play in which the words are sung): e.g. La Bohème by Puccini, Carmen by Bizet.

Rock and pop music: e.g. U2, Bon Jovi, Maria Carey. This music is played by groups/bands, e.g. Bon Jovi, Simply Red; or solo artists, e.g. Madonna. Many solo artists, e.g. Phil Collins, are singer-songwriters (= they write and perform/play their own songs).

Jazz: e.g. Duke Ellington, Miles Davis, Stan Getz.

C Musical instruments and musicians

D Art

If you want to see the paintings of a famous artist, you need to go to an art gallery or museum. There you can see individual paintings and sometimes an exhibition (= a collection of paintings by one painter or school of painters, e.g. the Impressionists), e.g.

There’s a Monet exhibition at the National Gallery next week.

There are many different types and styles of painting:

a portrait (= a painting of a person)
a self-portrait (= a painting of the artist by himself/herself)
a landscape (= a painting of part of the countryside)
an abstract painting (= a painting that is not realistic)
Exercises

73.1 What are or were these people? (painter? sculptor? novelist? poet? dramatist? songwriter? composer? conductor? rock star? pop star? musician? singer? pianist? etc.) Some of them may be more than one of these things.

1 Leo Tolstoy 7 Giuseppe Verdi 13 Henry Moore
2 William Wordsworth 8 Mick Jagger 14 Jorge Luis Borges
3 Henrik Ibsen 9 Milton Nascimento 15 Pablo Picasso
4 Yukio Mishima 10 Paul Tortelier 16 Saki
5 Anton Chekhov 11 Paul Simon 17 Leonard Bernstein
6 Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart 12 Mark Knopfler 18 Alberto Giacometti

73.2 What do you call the people who play the following instruments?
piano  guitar  drums  violin  cello  flute

73.3 What types of painting are these?

1 2

73.4 Use the context and your own knowledge to fill the gaps in these sentences and dialogues.

1 He used to be conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic
2 Phil Collins was in a famous called Genesis before he became a
3 A: Do you like music?
   B: Yes, very much.
   A: And who’s your favourite?
   B: It’s hard to say, but I love Bach and Vivaldi.
4 There’s going to be an of his paintings at the new art
5 She used to her own songs but now she mainly material
   written by other people.
6 I haven’t been to the since I saw The Marriage of Figaro last year.
7 I think The Great Gatsby is Scott Fitzgerald’s best
8 His first was performed in a very small theatre.
**Newspapers**

A **Background**

In Britain, most newspapers are daily (= they come out / are published every day); a few only come out on Sundays. Magazines are usually weekly (= they come out every week), or monthly (= published every month).

Some newspapers are tabloids (= small in size) e.g. *The Mirror*; others are called broadsheets (= larger in size) e.g. *The Times*. In general, the tabloids represent the popular press (short articles and lots of pictures) and the broadsheets represent the quality press (longer articles and more ‘serious’). The largest circulation (= number of readers) is *The Sun*.

B **Contents**

Most British papers contain the following:

- home news (= news about Britain)
- foreign/international news (= news about other countries)
- business news
- sports news
- features (= longer articles about special subjects, e.g. a famous person or a political issue)
- radio and TV programmes
- weather forecast (= tells you what the weather will be like)
- reviews (= when film, theatre and music critics write about new films, plays and records, and give their opinion of them)

C **People**

**Editor**: the person in control of the daily production.

**Reporters/journalists**: people who report news and write articles; many journalists are freelance (= they work for themselves and are not employed by the newspaper).

D **Headlines**

Certain words (usually very short) are often used in newspaper headlines. Here are some:

- *row* (pronounced like ‘cow’) (= an argument)
- *quit* (= to leave a job)
- *bid* (n, v) (= an effort / a try / an attempt)
- *cut* (v, n) (= to reduce / make less)
- *back* (= to support)
- *hit* (= to affect badly)
- *talks* (= discussions)
- *key* (= very important)

E **‘It said in the paper that ...’**

When we refer to something in a newspaper we can use the verb *say* (NOT *write*), or the expression *according to*:

- *It says in The Times that they’ve found the missing girl.*
- *According to The Guardian, the missing girl was found last night.*

---

This page from *English Vocabulary in Use* by *H. C. Granger* provides a comprehensive list of terms related to newspapers and their contents, including background information, types of newspapers, their contents, and common terminology used in headlines. It also offers guidance on how to refer to information found in newspapers using appropriate verb choices and expressions.
Exercises

74.1 Think about newspapers in your own country. Answer these questions.

1. How many daily national newspapers are there?
2. How many are tabloids?
3. Are any of the ‘quality’ papers in tabloid form?
4. How many broadsheets are there?
5. How many newspapers only come out on Sunday in your country?
6. Which newspaper has the largest circulation?
7. Can you name at least one editor of a daily paper; and two or three famous journalists who write for daily or weekly papers?
8. How often do you read the newspaper? How often do you buy a newspaper?

74.2 Explain these headlines in your own words. Do not use the underlined words.

1. Minister to quit
2. Government cuts spending on new hospitals
3. New bid to cut teenage smoking
4. Bad weather hits farmers
5. Germany backs US plan
6. Ministers in tax row
7. POLICE DISCOVER KEY WITNESS
8. Japan and US enter fresh talks

74.3 Buy two different newspapers (in English or your own language) and complete this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Paper 1 (no. of pages)</th>
<th>Paper 2 (no. of pages)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>home news</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foreign/international news</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feature articles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>business news</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sports news</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the same two papers complete this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Paper 1 (yes/no)</th>
<th>Paper 2 (yes/no)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>weather forecast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cartoons</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crossword</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radio and TV programmes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reviews</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How many pages are left? What are they about? If possible, compare answers with a friend.
Television

A Operating a television

You may also want to turn it up (= increase the volume because you can’t hear) or turn it down; and turn over (= change to a different channel, e.g. from 1 to 3)

Note: You can also say switch on, switch off, or switch over (but not switch it up/down).

B Types of programme

Here are some types of TV programme:

Soap opera: a programme often on two or three times a week, which follows the lives of a group/community of people; the stories are often exciting, dramatic and hard to believe.

Quiz show or Game show: individuals, teams or families who answer questions or play different games against each other. The winner gets a prize, e.g. a car, a holiday, money.

Chat show: a programme where a presenter talks to famous people about their lives and careers; sometimes there is music as well.

Documentary: a film with factual information, often analysing a problem in society.

A series: a number of programmes about the same situation or the same characters in different situations. This may be a comedy series (the programmes are intended to be funny), or a drama series (the programmes are intended to be exciting, with interesting characters and situations).

Current affairs programme: a programme about a current social/political problem. Current means that it is happening ‘now / at the present time’.

C TV in Great Britain

At the moment there are five ‘terrestrial’ channels (or stations) on TV (BBC 1, BBC 2, ITV, Channel 4, and Channel 5). If you pay extra, you can have a satellite dish and receive satellite TV; or pay to have cable TV – there are many channels available.

D Talking TV

Here are some useful words and phrases connected with television:

What’s on TV tonight? (= what programmes are showing on TV tonight?)

What time’s the film on? (= what time does it start?)

How long do the commercials last? (= the advertisements between programmes)

What’s your favourite programme? (= the programme you like most/best)

Are they showing the game live (= as it happens) or just recorded highlights? (= parts of the game after it has been played, e.g. later in the day/evening)

How much is a TV licence? (= money you have to pay the government if you have a TV)
**Exercises**

75.1 You are watching TV with a friend. What could you say in each of the situations below? Look at the example first.

*Example:* You want to watch a programme on TV. Could you turn the TV on?....

1. You can't hear the programme very well. Could you ........................................?  
2. You want to watch a different programme. Could you ........................................?  
3. Now it's too loud for you. Could you .................................................................?  
4. You don't want to watch any more. Could you .......................................................?

75.2 Here is part of an evening from three British TV channels. Can you find at least one example of: a documentary, a quiz show, a game show, a drama series, and a current affairs programme? There is also one example of a comedy series and two soap operas. Can you guess which programmes they might be?

**7.00 Telly Addicts**
Noel Edmonds hosts the quiz in which teams have their television knowledge put to the test.

**7.30 Watchdog**
Anne Robinson presents the stories that affect consumers in the 1990s. With Alice Beer and reporters Chris Choi and Johnathan Maitland.

**8.00 EastEnders**
Kathy tries to come to terms with Ted’s revelations. Michelle receives a letter that could change her life.  
*For cast see Tuesday*  
*Stereo Subtitled ......................................5500*

**8.30 2 Point 4 Children**
*The Deep.* There's something fishy going on when Bill and Ben are asked to look after their neighbour's house.

**9.00 Nine O’Clock News**
With Peter Sissons.  
*Subtitled*  
*Regional News Weather Rob McElwee .............3245*

**7.00 The Krypton Factor**
Four new contestants compete for a place in the November final.  
*Director Tony Prescott; Producer Wayne Garvie*  
*Stereo Subtitled ..................9448*

**7.30 Coronation Street**
It's farewell time at the Rovers.  
*Episode written by Stephen Mallatrat*  
*For cast see Wednesday. Repeated on Wednesday at 1.25pm*  
*Subtitled ......239*  
◆ *Bet’s off: page 22*

**8.00 Bruce’s Price Is Right**
Game show testing knowledge of the price of consumer goods.  
*Director Bill Morton; Producer Howard Huntridge*  
*Stereo Subtitled .............2968*

**8.30 World in Action**
In a classroom fitted with cameras, World in Action reveals what is really going on in Britain’s overcrowded schools and asks who is to blame.

**9.00 New series**

**Cracker**  
*Brotherly Love (part 1).*  
*In the first of this three-part thriller, a prostitute is found raped and murdered, opening old wounds at the station. See today’s choices.*

**7.00 Channel 4 News**
Presented by Jon Snow and Cathy Smith. Including *Weather*  
*Subtitled ..................829535*

**7.55 The Slot**
The daily soapbox offering viewers the chance to air their opinions.  
*Stereo ..................141603*

**8.00 New series**

**Desperately Seeking Something**
A four-part series in which Pete McCarthy explores the strange universe of alternative beliefs.

**8.30 Baby It’s You**
Continuing the six-part series which uses natural history filming techniques to observe the first two years of a baby’s life.

**9.00 Cutting Edge**

**The Trouble with Money**  
*Strange though it seems to some, not everyone enjoys winning the lottery. This documentary explores the joys and pitfalls of getting rich quick."

75.3 Answer these questions about TV in your own country.

1. How many ‘terrestrial’ ‘channels’ are there?  
2. Do you watch satellite TV and/or cable TV?  
3. In total, how much TV do you watch every week?  
4. What are your favourite programmes on TV at the moment?  
5. What night are they on?  
6. Do you enjoy watching the commercials?  
7. Do you often watch football matches live on TV? If not, do you watch the highlights?  
8. Do you need a TV licence in your country? If so, how much is it?
On the phone

A Starting a phone conversation

The first example is an informal situation; the second example is a more formal call.

A: Hello.
B: Is that Mary? [NOT Are you Mary? or Is it Mary?]
A: Yeah.
B: Hi. It's Ruth. [NOT I am Ruth, or Here is Ruth]

Note: When British people answer the phone at home they usually just say ‘hello’ and sometimes they also give their number. They do not give their name.

C: Good morning. Chalfont Electronics.
D: Oh good morning. Could I speak to Mrs Gordon, please?
C: Yes. Who's calling, please?
D: My name is Paul Scott. (This is usually how you introduce yourself in a formal situation.)
C: Right, Mr Scott. I'll put you through. (= I will connect you with Mrs Gordon)

B Telephone problems

4.20 p.m. You try to phone your sister Susan but the line is engaged (= the line is busy). In other words, someone is already on the phone (= using the phone).

4.30 p.m. You phone your sister again but it's the wrong number (= you have dialled another number, e.g. 637 424 and not 627 424, and a stranger answers).

4.35 p.m. You get through to your sister's number (= make contact) but she's out (= not at home). Her husband answers and says that Susan won't be back (= will not return) for a couple of hours, so you leave a message, e.g. Could you ask Susan to ring me when she gets back? The husband agrees to give Susan the message.

7.30 p.m. Susan phones you back but you are out. She leaves a message on your answerphone. Her message is: Jean, this is Susan. I'm just returning your call (= phone call). I'll give you a ring (= phone you) tomorrow.

C Useful vocabulary

A reverse charge call (AmEng = collect call). This is when the person you ring agrees to pay for the phone call. If you make a reverse charge call, you must go through the operator.

If you have someone's name and address, you can call Directory Enquiries to get their phone number. If you phone another town or city, you need to know the code, e.g. the code for Cambridge is 01223. This type of call is a long distance call (= a local call).
Exercises

76.1 Write down five words or expressions including the word 'phone' or 'telephone'.

76.2 Fill the gaps in these phone conversations with suitable words or phrases.

A: Good morning. Boulding Limited. Can I help you?
B: Yes. Paul Mathews and I'm trying to contact Mr Patterson. He actually left a (?) on my answerphone yesterday afternoon.
A: I see. Well, I'm afraid Mr Patterson's (?) at the moment. Can I ask him to (?) later?
B: Yes please. I shall be here until lunchtime. My (?) is 748 7267.

B: Hello.
A: Hello. Sandra?
B: No, sorry. I'm (?) Sandra's not here at the moment.
A: No, I've no idea.
B: OK. Well in that case, could I (?) a (?) for her?
A: Yes, of course.
B: Could you ask her to (?) this evening, please?
A: Sure. What's your name?
B: Catherine. I'm a colleague from work. She's got my number.
A: Right. I'll tell her.
B: Thanks very much. Bye bye.
A: Bye.

C: Hello?
B: Hello. Carlos?
A: Yeah, speaking.
B: Hi Carlos. Serena.
A: Oh hello. I was expecting you to ring yesterday.
B: I did - or at least I tried. (?) your number about six times last night but I couldn't (?) It was (?) all the time.
A: Oh yes, I'm sorry about that. I was (?) the phone to my brother for about an hour and then someone from school rang me about the table tennis tournament next week.
B: Oh well, never mind. Anyway I'm phoning about ...

76.3 Can you answer these questions?

1 In your country, what is the emergency number for the police, fire brigade or ambulance?
2 Is there a Directory Enquiries? What number is it?
3 From your country, what's the dialling code for the United Kingdom?
4 How much does it cost to make a local call?
5 How often do you have to pay your phone bill?
6 Is it cheaper to phone during the night?
7 What's the phone number of your English school?
8 Have you ever made a reverse charge call? If so, who was it to?

If possible, compare and discuss your answers with someone from the same country.
Computers

A Hardware

As well as the hardware (= the machines), you also need software (= the programs needed to work the machines). These programs are on disks, e.g. the hard disk inside the computer, or floppy disks or on CD-ROMs (= Compact Disc Read Only Memory, a CD on which you can put a large amount of information).

B Operating a computer

Using the mouse, you can do a number of things by clicking on different icons (= moving the mouse to point at different pictures at the top of the screen).

C What do people use computers for?

A word processor is a computer used to prepare documents or letters, or the software that is used for this purpose. Many people use their computers for word processing, e.g. writing letters and reports. A lot of business people use spreadsheets (= a program used to enter and arrange numbers and financial information) and databases (= programs which allow you to store, look at or change a large amount of information quickly and easily). Some people also use graphics (= the pictures and symbols a computer program can produce).

D Important vocabulary

More and more people are becoming computer-literate (= have experience of working with computers and know how to use them) as many programs and machines are so user-friendly (= easy to use). You can now connect your computer to computers all over the world using the Internet (= a system that allows computers to connect using telephone lines). People send each other e-mail (electronic mail) messages using this system or network.

If your computer is slow it may need more memory. It may crash (= stop working) if there is not enough memory or if it has a bug (= a software problem; also a virus). Make sure you make a back-up copy of your work (= an extra copy on a floppy disk).
Exercises

77.1 Add another word, abbreviation, or part of a word, to complete common ‘computer’ words and phrases.

1 soft_________ 7 a computer ____________
2 a word __________ 8 __________-ROM
3 floppy __________ 9 laser ____________
4 __________-friendly 10 lap__________
5 __________-literate 11 spread________
6 key___________ 12 __________-mail

77.2 Can you remember what these symbols mean?

1 4 6
2 5
3

77.3 Complete this text about using a computer for word processing.

I wrote a report on the (1) __________ this morning. When I finished, I (2) __________ out two copies — one for me and one for my boss. Then, without any warning, the computer went (3) __________, and I’m afraid I lost the whole document. This is very unusual because normally I (4) __________ the data while I’m writing and then make a (5) __________ copy when I have finished. This morning I forgot.

Anyway, I gave the report to my boss, hoping that she would not ask me to change it in any way. She did. She thought it was a bit long and said it would be better if I used more (6) __________ to illustrate some of the written information. She also thought it would make the report look more attractive.

I went back and rewrote most of the report when the computer was OK, only I (7) __________ part of the middle section which was rather repetitive, and I added extra (8) __________ as my boss advised. It did look better by the time I’d finished, and this time I remembered to (9) __________ it and make a (10) __________ copy.

77.4 Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1 Do you have a computer at home? If so, what is it?
2 Do you use computers at school/college/university/work? If so, what type?
3 What do you use them for?
4 Would you say you are computer-literate?
5 Do you find most computers user-friendly?
6 What software programs are you familiar with?
7 Do you use e-mail?
8 Have you used CD-ROM? If so, what programs did you use and why?
9 Do you think ‘The Internet’ will have an important influence on our daily lives? Do you think it will be important in helping people from different countries to learn English?
A The system

Most children in England and Wales follow this route in the state system (= free education).

Age
3 some go to nursery school
5 everyone starts primary school
11 pupils go to a secondary school (AmEng = high school). This may be a comprehensive (= mixed ability) or a grammar school (= children selected for their academic ability)
16 they leave school and get a job, or go to a college for vocational (= job) training, e.g. hotel management, secretarial courses; or stay at school for two more years
18 they leave school and get a job or — go to university

e.g. teaching, business studies.

Note:
• You go to school (as a pupil to study) and go to university (as a student to study). You don’t use the definite article ‘the’ here. Other expressions like this are go to bed (to sleep); go into hospital (when you are ill); go to church (to pray / to worship).
• In some areas of the UK there are not many grammar schools.
• There are also public schools. In fact, these are private, and parents pay to send their children there. Some are expensive. About 5% of the population go to public schools.

B A school timetable

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson 1</th>
<th>MON</th>
<th>TUES</th>
<th>WED</th>
<th>THURS</th>
<th>FRI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Religious</td>
<td>Maths</td>
<td>Social</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>Visual Art</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Education</td>
<td></td>
<td>Education</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>(break)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 2</td>
<td>History</td>
<td>Science</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>Science</td>
<td>Geography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 3</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>Physical</td>
<td>Maths</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Education (PE)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>(lunch)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 4</td>
<td>Maths*</td>
<td>History</td>
<td>Information</td>
<td>Maths</td>
<td>Physical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Technology</td>
<td></td>
<td>Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesson 5</td>
<td>Geography</td>
<td>Visual Art</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Maths is an abbreviation of mathematics.

As you can see, the pupils have five lessons every day, and altogether they do (= study) eleven subjects a week plus Physical Education (PE). Every morning they have a twenty-minute break. There are three terms (= periods of continuous work) in a school year, and the timetable changes every year.

Note: Some words in English which end in ‘s’ look plural, but in fact they are singular: Maths isn’t my favourite subject, and physics is very difficult.
Most nouns of this type refer to subjects; other examples are economics and politics.
Exercises

78.1 Here are some school subjects but the letters are mixed up. What are the subjects?

Example: MGREAN  German

1 TAHMS .............................. 6 EHGORAGPY ..........................
2 IRTHOSTY .......................... 7 RAT ..............................
3 CNCESEI ............................ 8 SIMCU ............................
4 NISGHEI ............................ 9 EHNFCR ..........................
5 HOCTGEYNLO ....................... 10 NEOCCIOSM ........................

78.2 How much can you remember? Try to answer these questions or complete the sentences without looking at the opposite page.

1. At what age do children go to nursery school?
2. At what age do they start primary school?
3. When they go to secondary school it is either a grammar school or a .............................
4. At what age can English and Welsh children leave school?
5. According to the timetable the foreign languages studied is .................
6. Not including PE, how many subjects do the children do?
7. What happens if children fail all the exams they take at the age of 16?
8. What can they do if they pass all their exams at the age of 18?

78.3 What about you and your country? Answer these questions.

1. Did you go to nursery school?
2. Do most children start primary school at the age of five?
3. Is the secondary school system similar or different?
4. How many subjects did/do you study at secondary school?
5. Did/do you study any subjects which are not included opposite?
6. What was/is your favourite subject?
7. How many lessons did/do you have every day?
8. Is/was your school a state school or public school?
9. At what age can you leave school?
10. How many terms are there in a school year?

78.4 Complete these sentences with the correct expression.

1. When she was a child she went ............... in a small village with only fifty other pupils.
2. He didn't go to school last term because he was very ill and he had to go .................
3. I was very tired, so after I finished my homework I went .................
4. When I left school I went ................. and studied medicine.
5. It was a religious school, so we had to go ................. quite a lot.

78.5 The next unit is about university and further education. Can you think of six subjects you can study at university which you do not usually study at school? Write down your answers, then turn to the next page.
Education: university

A Subjects

You can normally do/study these subjects at university but not always at school:

- medicine
- law
- philosophy
- engineering
- psychology
- sociology
- architecture
- politics
- business studies
- agriculture
- history of art

Note: The underlined letters in some of the words above show the syllable with the main stress. Also note that the first syllable of psychology is pronounced /sai/ like 'my'.

B Studying at (a British) university

If you want to go to (= enter frm) university, you must first pass examinations that most students take at the age of eighteen (called 'A' levels). Most students take three 'A' levels (three examinations in three different subjects) and they must do well in order to get/obtain a place at university because the places are limited. At the moment, approximately 30% of young adults go to university in Britain.

If you get a place at university, the tuition (= the teaching) is free, and some students also get (= receive) a grant (= money to pay for living expenses, e.g. food and accommodation) as well. Students at university are called undergraduates while they are studying for their first degree.

Most university courses last (= go on for / continue for) three years, some courses last four years, and one or two courses, e.g. medicine, may be even longer. During this period students can say that they are doing/studying history, or doing / studying for a degree in history, for example. When they finish the course and pass their examinations, they receive a degree (the qualification when you complete a university course successfully). This can be a BA (= Bachelor of Arts) or a BSc (= Bachelor of Science), e.g. I have a friend who has a BA in history, and another who has a BSc in chemistry.

C Postgraduate courses

When you complete your first degree, you are a graduate. (In the US, students also use this word as a verb and say, they 'graduated in history' or 'graduated in chemistry', for example.) Some students then go on to do a second course or degree (postgraduate course / postgraduate degree). These students are then postgraduates. There are usually three possible degrees:

- MA (Master of Arts) or MSc (Master of Science); usually one year
- MPhil (Master of Philosophy); usually two years
- PhD (Doctor of Philosophy); at least three years

When people study one subject in great detail (often to find new information), we say they are conducting / doing / carrying out research (U); e.g.

I'm doing some research into/on the languages of different African tribes.

D School vs. university

At school, you have teachers and lessons, at university, you have lecturers and lectures. When a lecturer gives/does a lecture, the students listen and take/make notes (= write down the important information), but do not usually say much, except to ask occasional questions.
Exercises

79.1 Read these sentences spoken by university students. What is each person studying?
1 We have to know every bone in a person's body.
2 I'm concentrating on the modernist style and the work of Le Corbusier and Frank Lloyd Wright.
3 The way we use fertilizers is much more precise than twenty years ago.
4 We're going to concentrate on Freud and Jung this term.
5 I've been reading some books on time management.
6 Expressionism was really a reaction to the work of the Impressionists.
7 We've spent a lot of time on American foreign policy and how it has been affected by various domestic problems.
8 You must know this case - it's one of the most famous in legal history.

Now mark the stress on each of your answers, check with the answer key, and practise saying the words.

79.2 What do you call:
1 the money some students receive if they get a place at university?
2 the qualification you get at the end of university?
3 the name we give students during this period at university?
4 teachers at university?
5 students when they have completed their first degree?
6 students studying for a second degree?
7 the study of one subject in great depth and detail, often to get new information?
8 the talks that students go to while they are at university?

79.3 Replace the underlined verbs with different verbs that have the same meaning in the context.
1 Who is giving the lecture today?
2 Did she receive a grant for her course?
3 Is it more difficult to obtain a place at university?
4 You have to pass the exams before you can enter university.
5 He's studying physics, I think.
6 I think they're carrying out some research into the cause of asthma.
7 I didn't take any notes in the lecture yesterday.
8 The course goes on for three years.

79.4 How similar is university education in your own country? Answer these questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else from your own country and/or someone from a different country.
1 Do you need to pass examinations before you can go to university?
2 Do some students get a grant to study at university?
3 Is the tuition free if you go to university?
4 Do most students go to university at the age of 18 or 19?
5 Do more students go to university in your country than in Britain?
6 Do most degree courses last three years?
7 What is your equivalent of the British BA or BSc?
8 Do you have similar postgraduate degrees in your country?
Law and order

A The police

They do a number of things. When someone commits a crime (= breaks the law and does something wrong / illegal / against the law) the police must investigate (= try to find out what happened / who is responsible). If they find the person responsible for the crime, they arrest them (= take them to the police station). At the police station, they question them (= ask them questions to find out what they know) and if they are sure the person committed the crime, the person is charged with the crime (= the police make an official statement that they believe the person committed the crime). The person must then go to court for trial.

B The court

In court, the person charged with the crime (now called the defendant or accused) must try to prove (= provide facts to show something is true) that they did not commit the crime; in other words prove that they are innocent (≠ guilty). The jury listens to all the evidence (= information about the crime, for and against the defendant) and then makes their decision.

C Punishment

If the defendant is convicted of the crime (= the jury decides that the defendant is guilty), the judge will give the sentence (= the punishment). For example, if a person is convicted of murder, the sentence will be many years in prison. The person then becomes a prisoner, and the room they live in is called a cell.

For crimes that are not serious (often called minor offences, e.g. illegal parking), the punishment is usually a fine (= money you have to pay).
80.1 Put this story in the correct order.
1 they found both men guilty.
2 and charged them with the robbery.
3 £10,000 was stolen from a bank in the High Street.
4 After the jury had listened to all the evidence
5 They were sent to prison for seven years.
6 The trial took place two months later.
7 and they finally arrested two men.
8 They questioned them at the police station
9 The police questioned a number of people about the crime

80.2 Answer the questions.
1 Who investigates crimes?
2 Who sentences people?
3 Who live in cells?
4 Who decides if someone is innocent or guilty?
5 Who defend people and present evidence?
6 Who commit crimes?

80.3 Fill the gaps with suitable words.
1 I have never .................... the law and .................... a crime.
2 In Britain it is .................... the law to drive a car without insurance.
3 If you park illegally you will have to pay a ....................
4 The police were fairly sure the man committed the crime, but they knew it would be
difficult to .................... it in court.
5 The jury must decide if the accused is innocent or ....................
6 In order to reach their decision, the jury must listen carefully to the ....................
7 If the accused is .................... of murder, the .................... may be at least ten years in
prison.
8 He has been in trouble with the police once before, but it was only a minor ....................

80.4 Read this short story, then write down your response to the questions below, based on your
knowledge of the law in your own country.

Two fifteen-year-old boys broke into a house in the middle
of the day when the owner was out, and took money and
jewellery worth about £900. The owner reported the crime
to the police when she returned home at 6 p.m.

1 Will the police investigate this crime?
2 How will they investigate? What will they do?
3 Do you think the police will catch the two boys?
4 If they do, what crime will they be charged with?
5 Can the boys be sent to prison?
6 What do you think the sentence would be? Do you think this is the correct sentence?

Compare your answers with the answer key (based on the situation in the United Kingdom).
If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.
Crime

A Against the law

If you do something illegal (= wrong / against the law), then you have committed a crime. Most people commit a crime at some time in their lives, e.g. driving above the speed limit, parking illegally, stealing sweets from a shop when they were children, etc.

B Crimes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Crime</th>
<th>Criminal (= person)</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>theft (= general word for stealing)</td>
<td>thief</td>
<td>steal (also take)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>robbery (= steal from people or places)</td>
<td>robber</td>
<td>rob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burglary (= break into a shop/house and steal things)</td>
<td>burglar</td>
<td>burgle / break into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoplifting (= steal from shops when open)</td>
<td>shoplifter</td>
<td>shoplift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murder (= kill someone by intention)</td>
<td>murderer</td>
<td>murder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manslaughter (= kill someone by accident)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rape (= force someone to have sex)</td>
<td>rapist</td>
<td>rape</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C Crime prevention

What can governments do to fight crime (= take action to stop crime)? These things happen in some countries, although many people may think they are not a good idea.

Police carry (= have) guns.
Police are allowed to (= are permitted to) stop anyone in the street and question them.
The courts give tougher punishments for crimes committed than in the past (e.g. bigger fines or longer prison sentences than in the past).
There is capital punishment (= death, e.g. by electric chair or hanging) for some crimes.

What can individuals do to prevent a crime from happening (= stop a crime happening)? Here are things some people do to protect themselves and their property (= home and land), although you may not think they are all a good idea.

Don’t walk along dark streets late at night (e.g. midnight) on your own (= alone).
Lock all doors and windows when you go out.
Don’t wear expensive jewellery.
Leave lights on at home when you go out.
Fit (= install) a burglar alarm (= a machine which makes a noise if someone enters your home).

Make sure your money is safe, e.g. wear a money belt.

Carry a mace spray. (This is a chemical and if you spray it in someone’s face, it is very unpleasant. In some countries you are allowed to carry this type of spray.)

Put money and valuables (= valuable possessions) in a safe (= a strong metal box, which is very difficult to open or break).

Keep a gun in your house for self-defence (= to protect yourself if someone attacks you).
Exercises

These exercises also revise some vocabulary from Unit 80.

81.1 Organise the words in the box into three groups: crimes, people, and places.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>murder</th>
<th>thief</th>
<th>prison</th>
<th>barrister</th>
<th>robbery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burglar</td>
<td>cell</td>
<td>criminal</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>rape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manslaughter</td>
<td>judge</td>
<td>prisoner</td>
<td>jury</td>
<td>police station</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

81.2 Respond to these statements or questions confirming the crime in each one.

1. A: He broke into the house, didn't he?
   B: Yes, he's been charged with ......................

2. A: He killed his wife?
   B: Yes, he's been charged ............................

3. A: She stole clothes and jewellery from that department store, didn't she?
   B: Yes, and she's been ..............................

4. A: The man on the motorbike didn't mean to kill the boy.
   B: No, but he's been charged ........................

5. A: He took the money from her bag?
   B: Yes, but they caught him and he's been ......................

81.3 How safe and secure are you? Answer these questions, yes or no.

1. Do you often walk in areas which are not very safe?   yes = 1  no = 0  
2. Do you often walk on your own in these areas late at night?   yes = 2  no = 0  
3. Do you wear a money belt when you go out?   yes = 0  no = 1  
4. Do you wear an expensive watch or expensive jewellery?   yes = 1  no = 0  
5. Do you check doors and windows before you go out when your home is empty?   yes = 0  no = 2  
6. Do you have a burglar alarm?   yes = 0  no = 1  
7. Do you leave lights on when you go out?   yes = 0  no = 1  
8. Is there someone who protects the building while you are out?   yes = 0  no = 2  
9. Do you have a safe in your home?   yes = 0  no = 1  

Now add up your score: less than 3 = very, very safe; 3–5 = quite safe; 6–8 = you could take a lot more care; more than 8 = you are a dangerous person to know!

81.4 Fill the gaps in these questions with a suitable word.

1. Do you think the police should ..................... guns?
2. Do you think the police should be ..................... to stop and question people without a special reason?
3. Do you agree with capital ..................... for certain crimes such as murder?
4. Do you think it should be legal for people to carry a mace .....................?
5. Do you think people should be allowed to use a gun or knife in self-.....................?
6. Do you think tougher punishments will help to ..................... crime?

What is your opinion on these questions? Discuss them with another person if possible.
Politics

A Types of government

Monarchy: a state ruled by a king or queen. There are also countries that have a monarchy, but the monarch is not the ruler, e.g. The United Kingdom.

Republic: a state governed by representatives (= men or women chosen by the people) and a president, e.g. USA or France. People who believe in this system are republicans.

Democracy: a system of government in which leaders are chosen by the people, e.g. France or the UK. People who believe in this system are democrats.

Dictatorship: a system of government in which one person rules the country (= one person has total power). This person is called a dictator.

B Political beliefs

Abstract noun | Personal noun/adjective
---|---
conservatism | conservative
socialism | socialist
social democracy | social democrat
liberalism | liberal
communism | communist
fascism | fascist

People who believe in social democracy are social democrats.

C Political positions

What does it mean to be a socialist or a conservative? Often, it means different things in different countries, but in Britain we often talk about someone’s political position like this:

left-wing / on the left | middle of the road / in the centre ( = liberal) | right-wing / on the right ( = conservative)

D Elections

In a democracy, people vote for (= they choose in a formal way / elect) the political party (e.g. conservatives, liberals or socialists) that they want to form (= make) the government. They do this in an election, and in many countries elections take place / are held (= they happen) every four or five years.

42% voted for the socialists in the last election (= the socialists got 42% of the votes). The president was elected two years ago.

E Government

Political systems are different all over the world. In the UK, when a political party wins a majority (= 51% or more) of seats (= official positions in parliament) in an election, they become the government of the country, their leader (= the head of the party / person in control) becomes Prime Minister and they are in power.

The government must have policies (= programmes of action) to run (= manage) the country. This means, for example, an economic policy (for the economy), and a foreign policy (for actions taken by the country in other parts of the world).
Exercises

82.1 Complete this word-building table. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abstract noun</th>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>politics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>democracy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dictatorship</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>socialism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conservatism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberalism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

82.2 Fill the gaps to complete this text about the political system in the United Kingdom. One word in each gap.

In the UK (1) _______ are held every five years. (The (2) _______ Minister may decide to hold one after four years, but five years is the maximum.)

Some countries have a system of proportional representation: this means in theory, that a political party with 30% of the (3) _______ should get 30% of the seats in (4) _______. In the UK, the political (5) _______ is different: here the winner takes all. This means that the person with the most votes in each political area (called a constituency) wins the seat; and the political (6) _______ which wins a (7) _______ of the seats will (8) _______ the government on their own. As a result of this system, it is possible for a party to be in (9) _______ with only 40% of the total vote. Some people think this system is unfair.

What do you think? What possible reasons could there be to justify (= support) this system? Think about your answer, then compare it with the ideas suggested in the key.

82.3 Answer these questions about your own country. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

1. Which party is in power at the moment?
2. When were they elected?
3. Who is the leader of this party?
4. Is this person the President or Prime Minister of your country?
5. Do you agree with most of their policies?
6. Would you describe yourself as left-wing, right-wing, or in the centre?
7. Do you think your political views have changed much during your lifetime?
8. How many major (= important) political parties are there?
9. Who did you vote for in the last election?
10. Do you think this party will win the next election? Will you vote for them again?

82.4 You can increase your English vocabulary in politics quite easily:

Buy three newspapers (in English if you are in an English speaking country, or your own language if you are in your own country), and find the same political story in each one. Read the articles and underline any words that appear in all of them, and any other words you think are important. If you are reading a newspaper in English, try to guess the meaning of these words and then use a dictionary to check.

This exercise is equally useful if you read articles in your own language. You use a bilingual dictionary to find the English translation/explanation for your underlined words, and you can then look up these words in a monolingual dictionary as well.
Bureaucracy

What is it?

Bureaucracy refers to the official rules and procedures used by officials (= bureaucrats) to control an organisation or country. For many people it is a negative word as it often means unnecessary rules, long waits, and lots of documents and forms.

Documents

When you need to obtain (= get) or show documents, it is important that you know the names of them. Here are some important ones:

- passport
- identity card: a card with your name, date of birth and photo to show who you are. Great Britain is one of the few countries where people still do not have identity cards.
- driving licence: the official document which permits you to drive on public roads.
- visa: this gives you permission to enter, pass through or leave a country.
- certificates: official pieces of paper stating certain facts, e.g. a birth certificate gives facts about your birth, and exam certificates state you have passed certain exams.

Officials often check (= look at and examine) your documents, e.g. the police may check your driving licence; passport officials may check your identity card.

Some of these documents are for a fixed period of time, e.g. a visa may be for six months. At the end of that time, your visa runs out (infml) / expires (fml) (= it finishes / comes to an end). If you want to stay in the country you must renew it (= have a new one for a further period of time). You can renew a visa, a passport, a membership card for a club, etc.

Forms

There are also situations where you need to fill in (= complete) forms. Here are some:

- landing card: a form you may have to fill in when you enter another country.
- enrolment form: a form you often fill in when you do a course, go to a school or college, etc. It may also be called a registration form.
- application form: a form to write details of yourself, often when applying for a job.

With almost all forms, you will need to sign them (= write your signature), e.g:

  

Formal language

Here are some formal written expressions and their spoken English meanings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Written</th>
<th>Spoken</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>date of birth</td>
<td>When were you born?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country of origin</td>
<td>Where do you come from?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marital status</td>
<td>Are you single or married?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date of arrival</td>
<td>When did you arrive?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date of departure</td>
<td>When are you leaving? (or when did you leave?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bureaucratic problems

We often associate bureaucracy with problems. For example, you may have to queue (v, n) (= wait in a line) to get an official piece of paper or have it stamped.
Exercises

83.1 Write down at least two words which can be used before these nouns.

1 ........................................ 3 ........................................
   card licence

2 ........................................ 4 ........................................
   certificate form

83.2 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 Will you need to ................. a visa if you go to the United States?
2 I was surprised that nobody ................. my passport when we arrived in France.
3 Could you ................. this form, please?
4 They sent the form back to me because I had forgotten to ................. it at the bottom.
5 I'm afraid my visa ................. next week, so if I want to stay here I will have to ................. it. But I don't think it'll be a problem.
6 You should get there early because there are always long ................., and you may have to wait quite a long time.
7 I want to do an English course in London, so I wrote to a few schools and asked them to send me an ................. form.

83.3 How many of these documents do you have?

- a passport
- an identity card
- a driving licence
- a TV licence
- a birth certificate
- a degree certificate (from a university)
- a marriage certificate
- an exam certificate for an English exam, e.g. Cambridge, Oxford or ARELS

83.4 Complete these sentences with a suitable paraphrase.

1 What's your date of birth? In other words, when ........................................?  
2 What's your country of origin? ........................................?  
3 What's your marital status? ........................................?  
4 What was your date of arrival? ........................................?  
5 When's your date of departure? ........................................?

83.5 I asked some English people what they felt about bureaucracy and also about problems they had had with bureaucracy. What about you? How do you feel? Have you had any problems? Write down your thoughts and problems, then compare them with the replies from British people in the answer key.

1 ........................................  
2 ........................................  
3 ........................................  

The outbreak (= start) of war

Wars often start because of a conflict (= strong disagreement) between countries or groups of people, about territory (= land that belongs to one group or country). Look at the diagram on the right and read the text on the left.

Country A invades country B (= A enters B by force and in large numbers), and captures (also takes / takes control of) the city of X. Soldiers from country B have to retreat (= go backwards; ≠ to advance) to the city of Y. A’s army and air force continue to attack the city of Y (= take violent action to damage it), but B’s soldiers defend it (= take action to protect it) successfully.

A war zone

The area around the city of Y is now the main war zone (= the area where the fighting is happening). Country B has asked for help from its allies (= countries who are friends with country B). The allies send aid (= help) in the form of extra troops (= large groups of soldiers) and supplies (= food and other things that are needed every day, e.g. blankets and medicine) to help. There is shelling (= firing of guns and explosives) of the city every day and hundreds of soldiers are either killed or wounded (= injured while fighting). Many civilians (= ordinary people who are not in the army) are killed as well.

Peace talks

For the civilians who are still alive (= dead), the situation gets worse. As winter approaches, food supplies run out (= they are almost gone/finished) and there is no electricity. The soldiers get tired, and both sides begin to see that neither side can win the war; they agree to meet for peace talks (pl) (= talks to try to negotiate a peace settlement / an end to the war). After some time they agree to a ceasefire (= a period of no fighting).

Terrorism

This is violent action for political reasons. People who do this are terrorists, and a common terrorist crime is hijacking (= to take control of a bus, train, ship or plane; the people on board then become prisoners). The main purpose of hijacking is to use the prisoners (called hostages) in order to bargain for something (= to demand something in exchange for the hostages). The terrorists may agree to release (v, n) the hostages (= permit the hostages to go free) if a government agrees to give the terrorists money or release other terrorists.
Exercises

84.1 Match the words on the left with the correct definition on the right.
1 ally
2 release
3 conflict
4 troops
5 invade
6 wound
7 territory
8 ceasefire

a land controlled by a country
b stop fighting
c permit to go free
d injure while fighting
e large groups of soldiers
f friendly country
g strong disagreement
h enter another country by force and in large numbers

84.2 Use opposites to contradict what the speaker says in the sentences below. Look at the example first.

Example: A: Is the soldier dead?
B: No, he's still alive.

1 A: Will they agree to a ceasefire?
B: No, they'll..........................

2 A: Do you think the army will try to advance when the weather improves?
B: No, I think..........................

3 A: Do the people still have lots of food?
B: No, they're beginning to..........................

4 A: Is the town mostly full of soldiers?
B: No, they're..........................

5 A: Do you think they'll keep the hostages for a long time?
B: No, I'm sure they'll..........................

84.3 When we repeat an idea in a text we often try to avoid using the same word twice. Read this text and find examples of words being used as synonyms for previous ideas. The first one has been done for you (food and medicine = supplies).

THERE is a desperate need for food and medicine, but with the town surrounded, the lorries are unable to bring in essential supplies. We have seen ordinary people in the street giving some of their meagre rations of food to the soldiers who are defending them, but very soon the troops will be just as hungry as the civilians if the situation gets any worse.

Meanwhile, the centre of the town is being slowly destroyed. There is almost daily shelling of the buildings that still stand, and this morning we witnessed gunmen firing at almost anyone who dared to go out into the streets. One old woman was hit in the leg and we saw at least two others who were quite badly wounded as well.

Aid agencies have appealed to the soldiers to allow them to enter the town, but so far the General in command has even refused to let anyone in, including doctors and nurses. Many fear it is now only a matter of days before the town is captured, and if this happens, the army could take control of the whole region within weeks.

84.4 Can you answer these questions with two reasons for each one? If possible, discuss your answers with someone else before checking with the key.

1 Why do terrorists take hostages?
2 Why do some governments always refuse to agree to terrorist demands?
Pollution and the environment

A Important definitions
People are more worried about the environment (= the air, water, and land around us) as a result of the harmful (= dangerous/damaging) effects of human activity. Some of these activities cause pollution (= dirty air, land and water) and some are destroying the environment (= damaging it so badly that soon parts will not exist). Here are some of the problems:

the ozone layer: a layer of gases which stop harmful radiation from the sun reaching the earth; recent research shows that there is now a hole in parts of the ozone layer.
global warming: an increase in world temperature caused by an increase in carbon dioxide.
acid rain: rain that contains dangerous chemicals; this is caused by smoke from factories.

B The 'greens'
Because of these problems, there are many groups of people whose aim is conservation (= the protection of natural things, e.g. plants and animals). They are often referred to as greens, e.g. ‘Greenpeace’ and ‘Friends of the Earth’.

C Common causes of damage

smoke from factories

car exhaust fumes

dumping (= throwing away) industrial waste (= unwanted material) in seas and rivers

aerosol cans (usually called sprays). Some of these contain CFCs (= a chemical) which can damage the ozone layer.

cutting down tropical rainforests (e.g. The Amazon). This increases carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.

D How can we help?
• Don’t throw away bottles, newspapers, etc. Take them to a bottle bank or newspaper bank, and then they can be recycled (= used again).
• Plant more trees.
• Don’t waste (= use badly) resources, e.g. water, gas. Try to save (= waste) them.
Note: a resource is a valuable possession. There are natural resources, e.g. water or gold; and human resources, e.g. knowledge and skills. The word is usually plural.
Exercises

85.1 Fill the gaps to form a compound noun or phrase from the opposite page.
1 the ................ layer  5 ................ warming
2 ................ rain  6 ................ fumes
3 ................ waste  7 ................ rainforests
4 a bottle ................  8 natural or human ..............

85.2 Complete these word-building tables. If necessary, use a dictionary to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>waste</td>
<td>protect</td>
<td>damage</td>
<td>safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...........</td>
<td>destroy</td>
<td>environment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pollution</td>
<td>..........</td>
<td>harm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>damage</td>
<td>..........</td>
<td>danger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

85.3 Complete the definitions.
1 Conservation is the protection of natural things, e.g. ...................... and ......................
2 Acid rain is rain that contains dangerous chemicals. It is caused by ......................
3 The ozone layer is a layer of gases that stop dangerous radiation from the sun from reaching ......................
4 Global warming is an increase in world temperature caused by an increase in ......................
5 CFC (chlorofluorocarbon) is a chemical which ..............................................

85.4 If we want to look after the environment, there are certain things we should and shouldn’t do. Complete these two lists in suitable ways.

We should:
............................................................. paper, bottles and clothes.
............................................................. tropical rainforests.
............................................................. more trees.
............................................................. water and energy.

We shouldn’t:
............................................................. paper, bottles and clothes.
............................................................. the ozone layer.
............................................................. water and energy.
............................................................. tropical rainforests.

85.5 Test your knowledge of words from the opposite page and ‘green’ issues. Are these statements true or false?
1 CFCs protect the ozone layer.
2 ‘Greens’ believe in conservation.
3 A hole in the ozone layer could increase skin cancer.
4 Cutting down tropical rainforests increases the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.
5 Plastic cannot be recycled.
Air travel

A Departures

This is the usual sequence of activities when you get to the airport.

First you go to the check-in desk where they weigh your luggage. Usually you are permitted 20 kilos, but if your bags weigh more, you may have to pay excess baggage (= you pay extra). The airline representative checks your ticket and gives you a boarding card for the plane with your seat number on it. Then you go through passport control where an official checks [NOT controls] your passport, and into the departure lounge. Here, you can also buy things in the duty-free, e.g. perfume, alcohol and cigarettes. About half an hour or forty minutes before take-off, you are told to go to a gate number, e.g. gate 14, where you wait before you get on the plane. When you board (= get on) the plane, you find your seat. If you have hand luggage, you can put it under your seat or in the overhead locker above your seat.

The plane then taxis (= moves slowly) towards the runway, and when it has permission to take off, it accelerates along the runway and takes off.

Note: The verb to taxi is generally only used in this context.

B The flight

You may want or need to understand certain announcements; these come from the captain (= the pilot) or from an air steward or stewardess / cabin crew / flight attendants (= people who look after the passengers):

Please fasten your seat belt and put your seat in the upright position.

We are now cruising (= flying comfortably) at an altitude (= height) of 10,000 metres. May we remind passengers (= ask passengers to remember) that there is no smoking until you are inside the terminal building (= where passengers arrive and depart).

The cabin crew (= air stewards) are now coming round with landing cards. (These are cards you sometimes have to fill in when you enter certain countries.)

C Arrival

When the plane lands (= arrives on the ground), you have to wait for it to stop / come to a halt. When the doors are open, you get off the plane and walk through the terminal building and go to the baggage reclaim where you collect your luggage. You then pass through customs (green = nothing to declare; red = goods to declare; blue = European Union citizens). If you are lucky, you can then get a bus, taxi or train to the centre of town without waiting too long. You can also hire a car (= rent a car) at most airports.

Note: In British English you normally hire something for a short period, e.g. hire a room for a party, and rent something for a long period, e.g. a flat; for a car, you can use both words.
Exercises

86.1 Complete the words or phrases below using words from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>off</th>
<th>control</th>
<th>free</th>
<th>card</th>
<th>baggage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>lounge</td>
<td>luggage</td>
<td>reclaim</td>
<td>locker</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 boarding ........................................ 6 duty ........................................
2 baggage .......................................... 7 overhead .......................................
3 excess ............................................ 8 take...........................................
4 passport .......................................... 9 departure ......................................
5 hand ............................................... 10 check........................................

86.2 What do you call:
1 The place where you go when you arrive at the airport with your luggage?
2 The card they give you with the seat number on it?
3 The money you have to pay if your luggage is very heavy?
4 The place where you sit and have a drink when you are waiting for your flight to be called?
5 The bags you carry onto the plane with you?
6 The place above your head where you can put your hand luggage?
7 The part of the airport where the plane accelerates and takes off?
8 The people who look after you on the plane?
9 The part of the airport you walk through when you arrive or depart?
10 The place where you collect your luggage after you land?

86.3 Complete this part of a letter about an unpleasant flight.

Dear Tom

I've just arrived in Rome but I'm still recovering from a really terrible flight. We (1) ________ two hours late because of bad weather, and then over the channel we hit more bad weather. The (2) ________ announced that we had to (3) ________ our seat belts, which was a bit worrying, and for half an hour we (4) ________ through a terrible storm. It was still raining and very windy when we (5) ________ in Rome and I was really glad to (6) ________ the plane and get into the airport building.

Fortunately things have improved since then but I really hope the return (7) ________ is a lot better.

86.4 Think about the whole experience of flying (from check-in to the time you leave the airport at your destination) and answer these questions. If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

1 What is the most interesting part, and what is the most boring part?
2 Where do you often have delays, and why?
3 Is there any part that frightens or worries you?
4 What do you usually do during most flights?
5 Do you always eat the food they give you?
6 Is there one thing which would improve flying and make the experience more interesting?
Hotels

A Types of hotel
Hotels in Britain are graded with stars from one-star to five-star (five-star hotels are the best and most expensive). You can also stay in a Bed & Breakfast (B&B) (also called Guest Houses) where you pay for a bedroom, possibly an ensuite (= room with private bathroom) and breakfast.

B Types of hotel accommodation
a single room: for one person with a single bed
a double room: for two people with one large double bed
a twin room: for two people with two single beds
full board: includes breakfast, lunch and dinner
half board: includes breakfast and dinner
B & B: just the room and breakfast

C A visit to a hotel
We stayed in the Carlton Hotel for three nights in July, but I booked (= reserved) our room three months in advance (= before; in other words, in April) because it was the middle of the tourist season. When we arrived we checked in at reception, then the porter carried our suitcases up to our room. I gave him a small tip (n, v) – about 50p, I think. The staff were very friendly – we had a very nice chambermaid (= the woman who cleans the room) – and the room was very comfortable. The only problem we had, in fact, was with the shower which didn’t work (= function) very well. (You could also say ‘There was something wrong with the shower’.)

D Useful words and expressions
Could I book (= reserve) a room for next Thursday?
Could I have an early morning call at 7 a.m. please? (= Could you wake me at 7 a.m.?)
Could you put it on my bill, please? (= add the cost to the bill, e.g. for a drink you have in the hotel bar)
Could I pay my bill, please? (= pay for everything)
Could you order (= call) a taxi for me to go to the airport?
Are you fully booked (= completely full) next week?
Is breakfast/dinner included? (= Does the price include breakfast/dinner?)
Where’s the lift? (= the machine which takes you up or down a floor) [AmEng = elevator]
Excuse me. How do I get to the underground station from here?
Exercises

87.1 Put these sentences in a logical order.

1 I paid my bill.
2 I checked in at reception.
3 I left the hotel.
4 I went up to my room.
5 I spent the night in the hotel.
6 I had an early morning call at seven o’clock.
7 I booked a room at the hotel.
8 I went out for dinner in a local restaurant.
9 I arrived at the hotel.
10 I got up and had a shower.
11 I had breakfast.
12 I tipped the porter who carried my luggage upstairs.

87.2 What would you say in these situations?

1 You want to stay in a hotel for two nights next week with your husband/wife. You phone the hotel. What do you ask or say?
2 You are at the hotel reception and you are planning to leave in about 15 minutes. What could you ask the receptionist?
3 You want to wake up at 7 a.m. but you don’t have an alarm clock. What do you ask at reception?
4 You have a drink in the hotel bar. The barman asks how you want to pay. What’s your reply?
5 When you turn on the shower in your room, the water comes out very very slowly. What could you say at reception?
6 You want to go to the nearest bank but don’t know where it is. What do you ask at reception?

87.3 You are staying in quite a good hotel (e.g. two-star or three-star) in your country. Would you expect to have the following?

1 a room without a private bathroom
2 a hairdryer in the bathroom
3 a colour television in the room
4 a telephone in the room
5 writing paper in the room
6 a machine for making tea and coffee in the room
7 an electric trouser press (= a machine which presses/irons your trousers for you) in the room
8 air conditioning in the room

If possible, compare your answers with someone from a different country.
A sightseeing holiday

A Sightseeing

You may do a bit of sightseeing on holiday, or you may do a lot of sightseeing, but you will probably go to a museum or art gallery, and see or visit some of these things:

- temple
- castle
- cathedral
- market
- fountain
- statue
- palace

Many people go on a sightseeing tour of a town (usually in a bus); they can also go on a tour of the castle / the cathedral / the art gallery, etc. When you are sightseeing, it helps to buy a guidebook (= a book of information for tourists) and a map of the town you are in.

B Things that tourists often do on holiday

look round the shops / have a look round the shops
take photographs
spend a lot of / lots of money
buy souvenirs (= typical products from the country)
get lost (= lose their way)
go out most evenings (= go to different places for social reasons, e.g. restaurant or disco)
have a good/great time (= enjoy themselves)

C Describing ‘places’

The word place is very common and can describe a building, an area, a town, or country:

- Bruges is a lovely place (= town) and we found a really nice place (= hotel) to stay.
- The town is full of interesting places (= areas/buildings).

These words are often used when we describe places:

- Venice is beautiful but it’s always packed (= very crowded/full) with tourists in the summer.
- New York is very cosmopolitan. (= full of people from different countries and cultures)
- Vienna has lots of historical monuments. (= places, e.g. castles, built a long time ago)
- Many beautiful cities have become very touristy. (= a negative word: ‘too much tourism’)
- Sao Paolo is a really lively place (= full of life and activity) and the night-life is fantastic.

Note: If you want to ask if it is ‘a good idea’ to visit a place, you can use worth + -ing:

A: If I go to Scotland, is it worth spending a few days in Glasgow?
B: Yes definitely. And if you want to travel round a bit, it’s worth renting a car.
88.1 Complete this postcard that John sent to his family while he was on holiday. You may need a word or phrase in each space.

Hi everyone, I've been in Paris for almost a week now and I'm having a (1) _________. I spent the first few days (2) ________ - The Eiffel Tower, Notre Dame, and all the usual tourist attractions. Most places are absolutely (3) ________ with tourists (it's the time of the year I suppose), so yesterday I decided to have (4) ________ round the shops and I bought a few (5) _________.

Today I've been to a couple of very interesting art (6) _________. I got (7) ________ on my way back to the hotel but it didn't matter because I discovered a really fascinating (8) ________ with lots of little stalls selling just about everything from apples to antiques.

I ate in the hotel the first night but usually I (9) ________ and have dinner in a restaurant - the food is fantastic. I'm afraid I've (10) ________ a lot of money, but it's a great place and I've (11) ________ lots of photographs so you'll be able to see for yourself when I get back home on the 24th. See you then, John

88.2 Which of these places do you usually visit or go to when you are on holiday?
museums art galleries churches/cathedrals tourist shops concerts
discos / night clubs castles/palaces/temples the cinema markets restaurants bars the theatre

88.3 Confirm the information in the questions without repeating the same words and phrases. Use words and phrases from the opposite page.

Example: A: You've got quite a few pictures, haven't you?
B: Yes, we took lots of photos.

1 A: Is it a nice city?
   B: Yes, it's a ..............................................................

2 A: There's a big mix of people in New York, isn't there?
   B: Yes, it's very ..............................................................

3 A: Was it very crowded?
   B: Yes, it was ..............................................................

4 A: There's a lot to do in the evenings, isn't there?
   B: Yes, the ..............................................................

5 A: Did you enjoy yourselves?
   B: Yes, we ..............................................................

88.4 Without using one town more than twice, name a town or city in your country which is:
lively packed with tourists in the summer
cosmopolitan famous for its historical monuments
very touristy really worth visiting if you are interested in architecture
not worth visiting
On the beach and in the country

A Places to stay

When people go on holiday they stay in various places (= a number of different places): some go to hotels; others rent an apartment (a ‘holiday’ flat) or villa (= a house by the sea or in the countryside; often in the Mediterranean / southern Europe); some prefer sleeping in a tent at a campsite.

B At the beach

Many people spend their holiday in seaside resorts (= towns by the sea for tourists, e.g. Malaga, St. Tropez, Okinawa) where they can spend most of their time on the beach. Some people enjoy swimming, others love sunbathing (= lying on the beach in order to get a suntan). If you like sunbathing, you should use suntan lotion to help you get a tan and protect your skin. If you don’t have any protection, you may get sunburn, which is painful and can be dangerous. And if you want total protection you should use sunblock, or sit under a beach umbrella.

Swimming can also be dangerous if there are rocks under the water or if the sea is rough, e.g. with big waves.

C In the country

People who live in large towns often like to get away (= leave the place where they live) at weekends or in the summer, and enjoy the peace and quiet (= calm and tranquillity) of the country (also called the countryside). Some people just like to put their feet up (= relax and do nothing) and occasionally go for a stroll (= a slow casual walk); while others enjoy hiking (= long walks, often hill walking) across hills and valleys. And the countryside is a great place to have a picnic (= eating a prepared meal of cold food outside).

Note: Learners sometimes say ‘I love to be in the nature’. This is usually a translation from their first language and it is not correct in English. The nearest we can say is probably ‘I love being in the countryside’.

182 English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate)
Exercises

89.1 Write down at least five words beginning with 'sun'. You can check your answers on the opposite page and in the index.

sun................. sun................. sun.................

sun................. sun.................

89.2 Match a word from the left with a word from the right to form eight words or phrases.

1 sandy waves
2 suntan bathe
3 beach beach
4 rough lotion
5 sun sea
6 sea cliff
7 big side
8 steep umbrella

Now write answers to these questions.

1 Why do most people go to seaside resorts?
2 Why do people sunbathe?
3 Why do they use sunblock?
4 Why do they use suntan lotion?
5 How does it feel if you get sunburn?
6 What sport requires big waves?
7 Have you been in a boat when the sea was very rough? Were you seasick?

89.3 Complete this short text with a suitable word or phrase in each gap.

I live and work in Milan but I like to ☐............ at the weekend if possible. My parents have a small house in the ☐............, about 100 kilometres from Milan, and it's a great place to go if you want a bit of peace and ☐............ In the summer you can just ☐............ by the pool during the hottest part of the day, then in the evening go for a ☐............ through the village or over the fields. Sometimes we go out for the whole day and have a ☐............ somewhere, by the lake or next to one of the many vineyards.

89.4 Fill the gaps with a suitable word. (One word only for each gap.)

1 Would you prefer a holiday in a seaside ☐............ or a holiday in the country?
2 Would you prefer to stay in one place, or would you rather (= prefer to) go to ☐............ places?
3 Would you prefer to spend your time ☐............ on a beach or would you rather go for long walks?
4 Would you prefer to stay in a hotel or ☐............ an apartment?
5 Would you prefer to eat in a restaurant or have a ☐............ in the open air?
6 Would you prefer somewhere that was quite lively, or would you rather go to a place where there was peace and ☐............?

Look at the questions again. Which would you prefer? If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.
Time

Prepositions: at, on, in

- e.g. at 8 o'clo...
Exercises

90.1 Complete the text with at, on, or in.

There’s one bus from London which gets here (1) ten o’clock (2) the morning and then another which gets in (3) four o’clock (4) the afternoon. That’s (5) weekdays, but (6) the weekend the timetable is a bit different. Friday Saturday there are still two buses but the second one arrives (7) five thirty; (8) Sunday there is just the one bus (9) two o’clock. And (10) the winter, the service doesn’t run at all (11) Sundays.

90.2 Cross out the incorrect answers.

1 The teacher told us to finish our homework by/ until Monday.
2 We can’t leave by/ until the others get back.
3 I’ve been in the army for/since I was eighteen.
4 They’ve worked here for/since/during six months.
5 I visit my uncle every week for/since/during the winter.
6 I was at university for/since/during four years.
7 She’s going back to France in/ after three months’ time.
8 He left the office during/ throughout the lunch break.
9 It was hot during/ throughout August; we didn’t have one day under 30 degrees.
10 I booked a table in the restaurant by/for next Saturday. I hope that’s OK.

90.3 Can you complete these sentences with the correct number?

1 The Olympic Games usually lasts about ................... weeks.
2 Rembrandt was born in the ................... th century.
3 President Kennedy died in ................... . That’s ................... years ago.
4 It takes approximately ................... hours to fly from Tokyo to New York.
5 Some athletes can run 100 metres in less than ................... seconds.
6 The ................... was the decade in which the USA and USSR (at that time) were both trying to be the first country to put a man on the moon.

90.4 Replace the underlined time expressions with more ‘approximate’ time expressions.

1 I went to the library three days ago.
2 This dictionary isn’t great but it’ll be OK until I’m more advanced.
3 I haven’t been to the cinema for the last three weeks.
4 And I haven’t been to a concert for three or four years.
5 I went to Egypt with my parents but that was ten years ago.

90.5 Complete these sentences about yourself and your country.

1 On weekdays I usually get up at ................... and leave home at ................... .
2 I always clean my teeth in ................... .
3 I don’t go to school/college/work on ................... .
4 I usually have a holiday in ................... .
5 I have been in my present school/college/job for ................... .
6 I have been studying English since ................... .
7 I haven’t spoken English since ................... .
8 It takes me ................... to get to school/college/work.
9 You can’t get a driving licence until ................... .
10 It rains quite a lot during ................... .
Cardinal numbers

379 = three hundred and seventy nine
2,860 = two thousand eight hundred and sixty
5,084 = five thousand and eighty-four
470,000 = four hundred and seventy thousand
2,550,000 = two million, five hundred and fifty thousand
3,000,000,000 = three billion

Note: There is no plural ‘s’ after hundred, thousand, million and billion when they are part of a number. On their own, they can be plural, e.g. thousands of people; millions of insects.

Ordinal numbers and dates

One of the problems with dates is that we write them and say them in a different way:
We write 4 January (or 4th January), but say the fourth of January or January the fourth.
We write 21 May (or 21st May), but say the twenty-first of May or May the twenty-first.
1997 = nineteen ninety seven
1905 = nineteen hundred and five or nineteen oh five

Fractions and decimals

1 1/4 = one and a quarter
1 1/2 = one and a half
1 3/4 = one and three quarters
1 1/3 = one and a third
1 1/5 = one point two five
1.75 = one point seven five
1.33 = one point three three

Percentages

26% = twenty-six per cent
More than 50% is the majority; less than 50% is the minority.

Arithmetic

There are four basic processes for working out (= calculating) a problem:

+ = addition  e.g. 6 + 4 = 10 (six plus/and four equals/is ten)
- = subtraction  e.g. 6 - 4 = 2 (six minus four equals/is two)
× = multiplication  e.g. 6 × 4 = 24 (six times / multiplied by four equals/is twenty-four)
÷ = division  e.g. 4 ÷ 2 = 2 (four divided by two equals/is two)

Saying ‘0’

This can be spoken in different ways in different contexts.

telephone number: 603 724 = six oh three, seven two four (AmEng = six zero three)
mathematics: 0.7 = nought point seven, 6.02 = six point oh two
temperature: -10 degrees = ten degrees below zero / minus ten degrees
football: 2–0 = two nil  tennis: 40–0 = forty love

Talking numbers

Here are several useful words and expressions connected with numbers:
The streets have got odd numbers (e.g. 3, 5, 7) on the left and even numbers (e.g. 4, 6, 8) on the right.
I got 16 out of 20 in our last test.
Exercises

91.1 How do you say these numbers in English? Write your answers after each one.

1 462 .................................................................
2 2\( \frac{1}{2} \) ..............................................................
3 2,345 .................................................................
4 6.75 .................................................................
5 0.25 .................................................................
6 3\( \frac{1}{3} \) ..............................................................
7 1,250,000 ...........................................................
8 10.04 .................................................................
9 47% .................................................................
10 10 September ....................................................
11 3 July ..............................................................
12 602 8477 (phone number) ..................................
13 −5 centigrade ....................................................
14 In 1903 ............................................................
15 In 1876 ............................................................

Now practise saying them. If possible, record yourself saying them and then record a native speaker of English saying them or someone from your country who speaks English very well. Listen to both. How do you sound?

91.2 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 After the game I heard the crowd was over twenty thousands.
2 We arrived on the ten September.
3 There were two hundred twenty altogether.
4 I got twenty-five from forty in my test.
5 My birthday is thirty-one August.
6 My phone number is seven twenty three, six nought nine.

91.3 Write answers to these problems.

1 23 and 36 is ..................
2 24 times 8 is ..................
3 80 minus 20 is .................
4 65 divided by 13 is ............
5 Add 10 and 6, multiply by 8, then subtract 40 and divide by 11. What have you got left?
6 Divide 33 by 11, multiply by 7, add 10, and subtract 16. What number is left?

91.4 Answer these questions. Write your answers in words.

1 When were you born?
2 How much do you weigh?
3 What is the number of the flat or house where you live?
4 Is that an odd or an even number?
5 What is the approximate population of your town?
6 What is the approximate population of your country?
7 What is the normal temperature of a healthy person?
8 How many kilometres are there in a mile?
Distance, size and dimension

A  Distance

The most common way of asking about distance is probably: How far is it? Here are two more common questions, and some expressions often used in the reply.

Is it a long way?  |  No, just round the corner. / a couple of minutes' walk (= very near).
Is it very far?   |  No, not far. / No, about five or ten minutes' walk (= quite near).
Is it a long way? |  Yeah quite a long way. / Yeah, over a mile.
Is it very far?  |  Yes it's a long way. / Yes it's miles. / Yes it's too far to walk.

Note: We can use far in a question or negative but not in a positive statement on its own, e.g. we don’t say ‘it’s far’, we say ‘it’s a long way’. But we can say ‘it’s too far to walk’.

B  Size and dimension

We can describe size using the nouns above or the adjectives formed from them, like this:
What's the length/width/height/depth/size of ...?  or  How long/wide/high/tall/deep/big is ...?

Note:
- We generally use tall to describe people, trees and buildings; and high to describe mountains. We also say high-rise buildings.
- Notice also that in the answer to these questions, an adjective follows the measurement:
The garden is about ten metres wide. (= The width is about ten metres.)

C  Size in people and things

We use different words to describe the size of people and things:
a tall girl (≠ a short girl)
a fat person (≠ a thin person) See Unit 43 for more details.
a long book (= many pages) (≠ a short book)
a deep lake (= many metres) (≠ a shallow lake)
a thick book (≠ a thin book)  a wide road (≠ a narrow road)

Note: We can use big or large to describe size in English, but not great. For English speaking people, great (infml) = fantastic. But we can use great before big to say that something is very big, e.g. I saw a great big dog in the park.
If you want to ask about size in clothes, you say: What size are you? or What size (shoes) do you take? If you don't know, then you need someone to measure you.

188  English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate)
Exercises

92.1 Think about the room/place you are in now and answer these questions, using some of the expressions from the opposite page.

1. How far is it to the nearest shop?
2. How far is it to a bank?
3. Is it very far to the nearest bus stop?
4. Is it very far to a post office?
5. Is it a long way to the nearest swimming pool?
6. Is it a long way to the next big town?
7. How far is the nearest railway station?
8. Is it far to the centre of town?

If possible, ask someone else the same questions and compare your answers.

92.2 Write down eight different questions you could ask about the distance, size or dimensions of the things in the pictures.

92.3 Contradict the speaker in the sentences below. Look at the example first.

Example: A: Is it a long film?
B: No, it's quite short.

1. A: Is he a bit fat?
   B: No, he's ........................................

2. A: The water's quite deep, isn't it?
   B: No, .............................................

3. A: Their office is in quite a low building, isn't it?
   B: No, .............................................

4. A: Is the road very wide at that point?
   B: No, .............................................

5. A: It's a fairly boring place, isn't it?
   B: No, .............................................

6. A: He's quite tall, isn't he?
   B: No, .............................................

7. A: They only live in a small place, don't they?
   B: No, it's ........................................
Shapes, colours and patterns

A Shapes

- a square (n) square (adj)
- a rectangle (also oblong) (n) rectangular (adj)
- a circle (n) round (adj) circular (adj)
- a semi-circle
- an oval (n) oval (adj)
- a triangle (n) triangular (adj)
- a pyramid
- a right angle
- a point (n) pointed (adj)
- a star

A square box, a round table, a pointed end, a rectangular field, an oval shape

Note: We can also form adjectives to describe shapes in this way:
The ball was egg-shaped; a heart-shaped wedding cake; a diamond-shaped bag.

B Colours

You will already know most of the common colours. Here are some that are less common:
Mix black and white to form grey. Mix red and blue to form purple.
Mix green and blue to form turquoise. Pink is a colour between red and white.
Beige is a very light brown with some yellow in it.

C Shades of colour (= degrees and variation of colour)

She bought a dark green skirt.
He was wearing light blue jeans.
My new shirt is pale yellow.

Note: With some colours, we use pale rather than light, e.g. pale yellow, pale pink.

D Patterns (also called ‘designs’)

- striped skirt
- tartan shirt
- floral tie
- check dress

E Use of the suffix -ish

When we want to say that a shape is almost round or a colour nearly green, we can express this idea by adding the suffix -ish: a roundish face; a greenish tie; a yellowish colour.
Exercises

93.1 Describe these pictures using the correct noun and a suitable adjective.

1. It's got a point at one end and that's the end you use to write with.
2. It's greyish on the outside, pink on the inside, it swims and you eat it.
3. The shape is rectangular and it's usually green. There are lots of other lines on it, and people play on it.
4. It's a reddish-orange in colour, quite long and usually pointed at one end, and you eat it.
5. At certain times of the month it's completely round; at other times, it's closer to a semi-circle but not quite.
6. It can look pale blue, more often dark blue, and sometimes a greenish blue. It really depends where it is and whether the sun is shining on it.
7. It's oval-shaped, white or beige or light brown in colour, hard on the outside, and you eat it usually when it is cooked.
8. It is triangular, and in some countries you have to carry one in the boot of your car.
9. The bottom part is triangular, and at the top there is another bit in the shape of a semi-circle. You put things on the triangular part and hang them using the semi-circular part.
10. It has four sides and four right angles.

93.2 What object is being described in each of these sentences?

93.3 What are you wearing? Write down a detailed description of what you are wearing, including the exact colour of everything. If there is a colour or design you cannot describe, try to find it using a bilingual dictionary.
Partitives

There are many different words used to describe a particular quantity of something. Usually the word is joined to the noun it describes with ‘of’.

A Containers (e.g. a bag) and contents (e.g. of shopping)

B With uncountable nouns

When we use uncountable nouns (e.g. advice), we sometimes want to talk about one of something. We cannot say an advice or one advice, but we can use certain words to make these nouns singular: a sheet of paper (= one piece of paper) or a slice of bread (= one piece of bread). We can actually use the word piece with many nouns:

- a piece of cake
- a piece of wood

You can use piece with some abstract nouns, e.g. a piece of information, a piece of luck.

The most common partitive is a bit, which is informal and used with many nouns. It usually means a small amount but can be quite general. It can be used with the examples above, and more: a bit of butter, a bit of time, etc.

C A pair of ...

Some nouns have two parts, e.g. trousers (two legs) and shoes (left and right). You can use a pair of to specify the number, e.g. a pair of skis, two pairs of shoes, three pairs of tights.

D Groups of things

Gang has a negative meaning: it suggests a group of young people who may cause trouble.
Exercises

94.1 Some of these containers do not look exactly the same as the ones on the opposite page, but the names are the same. Can you decide what the missing words are?

1 a ............ of milk
2 a ............ of water
3 a ............ of fruit
4 a ............ of matches
5 a ............ of biscuits
6 a ............ of apples
7 a ............ of paint
8 a ............ of coffee

94.2 Contents come in different containers. Would you be surprised to see any of the following?

a glass of soup  a vase of coffee  a bowl of milk
a jug of wine    a tube of cigarettes  a tin of tomatoes
a jar of mustard a bag of salt  a carton of toothpaste

94.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable noun.

1 They gave her a big ............ of flowers for her birthday.
2 They’re looking for a ............ of youths who may be responsible for the damage.
3 I cut about six ............ of ham and put them on a plate.
4 They own a large ............ of land on the coast.
5 I did a ............ of homework last night, then went out.
6 She told us to take out a blank ............ of paper, then write our names at the top.
7 A small ............ of people gathered outside the embassy.
8 I need at least two ............ of socks inside these shoes.
9 I asked him for a ............ of advice.
10 I like to put a ............ of cream in my coffee.
11 Have you seen that old ............ of boots I use for gardening?
12 I’ve got a ............ of time, so I can help you now if you like.

94.4 Cross out any answers which are wrong in these sentences.

1 I asked her for a bit/piece of advice.
2 I ordered a piece/sheet of cake.
3 There was a group/gang of journalists outside her house.
4 My lunch consisted of two slices/pieces of bread and a small bunch/group of grapes.
5 She hit me over the head with a small piece/bit of wood.
6 I’m in a hurry but I’ve still got a bit/piece of time.
7 We had a piece/bit of luck this morning; we won some money!
8 Could I have a piece/bit/drop of milk in my coffee?
The senses

A The five basic senses

These are: sight, hearing, taste, touch and smell. For each one we use a basic verb, which can be followed by an adjective or noun in these constructions:

- It looks terrible. (from what I could see)
- He sounds German. (from what I heard)
- It tastes strange. (from tasting it)
- It feels soft. (from touching it)
- It smells wonderful. (from smelling it)

We can also use the verbs as nouns. These are very common:

- I didn’t like the look of the fish.
- I don’t like the taste of olives.
- I really like the sound of church bells.
- I hate the smell of petrol.

B See, look (at) and watch

See is the ability to use your eyes (the verb is not normally used in the progressive); look (at) often means to look carefully / pay attention to something that is not moving; and watch often means to pay attention to something that is moving:

- I can’t see a thing without my glasses. (= I’m not able to see / I am blind)
- I can’t find my keys and I’ve looked (= searched / looked carefully) everywhere.
- I want the doctor to look at (= look carefully and examine) my knee.
- The police have been watching that man for weeks.
- I watched the match and then went for a drink with friends.
- Look (= look carefully) in the corner of my eye; you can see (= are able to see) the mark.
- He ran into me because he wasn’t looking. (= paying attention; the speaker seems angry)
- He ran into me because he didn’t see me. (= wasn’t able to see me; the speaker is not angry)

Sometimes two verbs are possible in one context; sometimes only one:

- I saw a great film last night. (= at the cinema; we cannot use watch here)
- I saw/watched a great programme last night. (= on TV; we can use either verb here)

C Hear and listen (to)

Hear means able to hear; listen (to) means to pay attention to things you hear:

- I couldn’t hear what she said. (= I was physically unable to hear)
- I can sometimes hear the trains from my bedroom. (= I am able to hear without trying)
- I don’t know what she said because I wasn’t listening. (= I wasn’t paying attention)
- I often listen to the early evening news on the television. (= I make an effort to listen)
- I was listening to the radio when I heard a strange noise outside.

Sometimes it is possible to use hear (but not in the progressive form) to mean ‘listen to’:

- I know he’s dead – I heard it on the radio last night. (= I heard it when I was listening)

D Touch

Don’t touch those wires – they’re dangerous.
You have to press that button to start the machine.
I don’t feel safe up here. Could you hold my hand?
Exercises

95.1 Complete the sentences using words from the box. Use a dictionary to help you.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>water</th>
<th>sore</th>
<th>cod</th>
<th>donkey</th>
<th>photo</th>
<th>silk</th>
<th>fresh</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>washing powder</td>
<td>ripe</td>
<td>door bell</td>
<td></td>
<td>horrible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I don’t think I’ll eat this peach; it doesn’t feel ......................
2. Those shoes look ...................... When did you buy them?
3. This milk smells ...................... I’ll open another bottle.
4. This coffee tastes like ...................... Who made it?
5. My feet are feeling ...................... after that run.
6. I love the smell of ...................... bread.
7. That painting looks like a ......................
8. I know it’s a horse but it looks like a ......................
9. British people eat a lot of haddock. It’s a white fish and tastes like ......................
10. I’m sure it is expensive perfume, but to me it smells like ......................
11. Your telephone sounds just like a ......................
12. This blouse was very cheap but it feels like ......................

95.2 Complete the sentences below the pictures using looks/tastes/feels + adjective.

1. This man ...................... 2. This pillow ...................... 3. This apple ......................

95.3 Cross out any answers which are wrong.

1. I was listening to / hearing the radio when I listened to / heard a terrible noise outside.
2. The government is going to introduce new laws about noisy neighbours – I listened to / heard it on the radio this morning.
3. She turned up the volume but I still couldn’t listen to / hear it.
4. I don’t know if this is an antique; we’ll have to get an expert to come and look at / see it.
5. They wanted to stay and watch / look at the programme, but it was a bit late.
6. I was very angry with Tom – he just wasn’t hearing / listening when I spoke to him.
7. Can you bend over and touch / press your toes?
8. You have to touch / press the eject button if you want to get the video out.
9. Could you touch / hold this video for a moment while I move the TV?
10. If you watch / look carefully, you can look / see how the man does the trick with those cards.

95.4 Write down a smell, taste, and sound that you like and hate. Complete these sentences, and then try to compare your answers with someone else.

I love the smell of .............................................. I hate the smell of ..............................................
I love the sound of .............................................. I hate the sound of ..............................................
I love the taste of .............................................. I hate the taste of ..............................................
Notices and warnings

A  Informative notices

Some notices give you information:

- **OUT OF ORDER** for a machine that is not working, e.g. phone or washing machine
- **NO VACANCIES** in the window of a B&B (cheap hotel). It means the hotel is full
- **SOLD OUT** outside a cinema or concert – there are no tickets left. All sold

B  Do this!

Some notices tell you to do certain things:

- **PLEASE QUEUE OTHER SIDE** (= wait in a line on the other side of this notice) e.g. in a bank or post office
- **KEEP RIGHT** (= stay on the right side, and continue on the right side) e.g. in airports

C  Don’t do this!

Some notices tell you not to do certain things:

- **NO EXIT**
- **NO SMOKING**
- **No Parking**
- **DO NOT LEAN OUT OF THE WINDOW**
- **PLEASE DO NOT DISTURB**
- **SILENCE**
- **EXAMINATION IN PROGRESS**
- **DO NOT LEAVE BAGS UNATTENDED**
- **Keep off the grass**
- **Please Do Not Feed The Animals**

D  Watch out!

Some notices are warnings – they tell you to be careful because something bad may happen:

- **MIND YOUR HEAD** (= be careful you don’t hit your head e.g. in front of a low door)
- **MIND THE STEP** (= be careful you don’t hit the step and fall e.g. in front of a step)
- **FRAGILE** (= be careful, this will break easily)
- **BEWARE OF PICKPOCKETS** (= be careful, there are people here who will steal things from your bag or pocket without you knowing)
Exercises

96.1 Can you complete these notices and warnings in possible ways, without looking at the opposite page?

PLEASE QUEUE .......... BEWARE OF ............
MIND THE ............ MIND YOUR ............ SOLD ............
PLEASE DO NOT ............ OUT OF ............
NO ............ KEEP ............

96.2 Where would you expect to see these notices or warnings?

1 No vacancies
2 Beware of pickpockets
3 Nothing to declare
4 Please queue other side
5 OUT OF ORDER
6 Sold out
7 FRAGILE
8 Keep off the grass

96.3 What notice(s) is/are possible in each of these places?

1 a zoo
2 a waiting area in a busy airport
3 the door of a hotel room at 9 o’clock in the morning
4 in front of garage doors
5 above the window of a train
6 inside a theatre
7 on the underground
8 a door going into a low room

96.4 Now write some different notices of your own. Think of six possible notices you could put in one of these places:

1 a school
2 a university
3 a language school
4 a place where people work, e.g. bank, factory, hospital

Where would you put these notices? If possible, do this activity with another person or show it to another person.

96.5 Look for other notices (in English or your first language). Can you understand the English notices? Can you translate the ones in your own language. Try to find six more notices in the next week.
Vague language

Vague means ‘not clear or precise or exact’. For example, we can say:
I have a vague idea where it is. (= I know the general area but I don’t know exactly where)
I have a vague memory of the game. (= I can remember bits of it but not very clearly)
In spoken English we often use words which are very vague.

A Thing(s)
• To refer to actions, ideas and facts:
The main thing (= fact) about John is that he likes everything to be organised.
Hitting that young child was a terrible thing (= action) to do.
• To refer to countable objects (often the speaker and listener know what the object is, or the speaker has forgotten the name of it at the moment of speaking):
What’s that thing (bicycle) doing in the house?
Put those things (cups and saucers) in the cupboard.
• To refer to a general situation:
How are things at school? (= school in general)
Recently, things (= life in general) have been going really well.

B Stuff
We generally use stuff (infml) to refer to uncountable nouns (or a group of countable nouns) when it is not necessary to be precise and give the exact name. Often the listener knows what the speaker is talking about.
Just leave that stuff (= different items of clothes) on the floor. I’ll clear it up.
I never use that biological stuff (= washing powder) in my machine.

C (A) sort of ...
This is used to describe something when you are not being very exact or precise. Sometimes it is not possible to be exact, and sometimes you cannot find the exact word you want.
The walls are a sort of yellowy colour. (= not exactly yellow, but similar to yellow)
It’s a sort of horror film. (= not exactly a horror film, but similar to one)
He gets ... uh sort of ... nervous when you mention the word ‘exams’.

D A bit
It often means ‘a little’, but it is very common in spoken English, and sometimes it may be used more generally to mean a little or even quite a lot.
Could you speak up a bit (= a little). I can’t hear you very well.
I thought the hotel was a bit (= quite) expensive, actually.

E Approximately
These words have the same meaning but approximately is more formal than the others:
The train should arrive in approximately twenty minutes.
It’s about three miles to the house.
There were roughly twenty people at the party.
We are expecting 100 guests, more or less.
Exercises

97.1 What could *thing(s)* and *stuff* refer to in these sentences?
1 I never wear that stuff; it’s got such a strong smell.
2 This thing has got stuck in the lock.
3 I bought a couple of bottles when I was in Scotland. It’s great stuff.
4 We don’t need these things. We can eat the chicken with our fingers.
5 What’s that white stuff called that you mix with water to make bread?
6 There was a great thing on television last night about elephants.
7 I couldn’t get any more stuff in my suitcase.
8 It’s a wonderful thing and keeps my young children occupied for ages.
9 I don’t know why I bought that thing – it’s too heavy for me to carry even when it’s empty.
10 It’s good stuff. My hair feels really soft, and it didn’t cost a lot.

97.2 Add a few words and phrases from the opposite page to make this conversation less precise and more natural.
A: How many people were at the conference?
B: 400
A: Did you enjoy it?
B: Yes
A: You don’t seem very sure.
B: Well, there were some good events, but it was too long.
A: And did you go to John’s talk?
B: Naturally
A: How did it go?
B: Well he was nervous at the beginning, but he soon got more confident and I think it went really well.
A: Did he have a big audience?
B: 75
A: That’s good, isn’t?
B: I think John was disappointed – he wanted at least a hundred.

97.3 Reply to each of these questions with a suitable ‘vague’ response.
1 A: Did you get everything you wanted?
B: Yeah
2 A: Was it expensive?
B: Yeah
3 A: Did you say the walls were blue?
B: Yeah
4 A: Will there be twenty chairs in the room?
B: Yeah
5 A: Is it a very serious film?
B: Yeah
6 A: Are you tired?
B: Yeah

97.4 Think about similar words and phrases that you use when speaking your own language. How many direct translations can you find for the words and phrases on the opposite page?
American English

A  British English and American English

People in Britain and America understand each other perfectly most of the time, but there are differences in grammar, vocabulary, spelling and pronunciation. With vocabulary, the same word may have a different meaning, e.g. British chips are American french fries; and American chips are British crisps. Sometimes there are completely different words for the same thing: a lorry in British English is called a truck in American English.

B  Vocabulary

Here are some important differences. The British English word comes first in each case. Most of the words are explained in other units. Use the index to help you.

Roads and transport
- taxi / cab/taxi
- return (ticket) / round trip
- petrol / gas (gasoline)
- main road / highway
- motorway/freeway
- underground/subway
- subway/underpass
- pavement/sidewalk
- lorry/truck
- car park / parking lot

Education
- secondary school / high school
- term/semester (= periods in
  a college year)
- university/college

Time
- autumn/fall
- holiday/vacation
- fortnight / two weeks

Homes
- tap/faucet
- rubbish / garbage/trash
- dustbin/trashcan
- toilet/bathroom
- wardrobe/closet

Buildings
- flat/apartment
- ground floor / first floor
- lift/elevator
- toilet (gents/ladies) / bathroom (men’s/ladies’ room)

Note: Some American English words are now becoming more common in British English, e.g. movie (Br. = film); apartment (Br. = flat); semester (Br. = term). One special problem is that guys in American English can refer to men and/or women, but in British English it is only used to refer to men.
Exercises

98.1 Decide if the speaker is using British English or American English, and cross out the incorrect answer.

1 We've decided to take our vacation in the autumn/fall this year.
2 At my son's high school the new term/semester starts next week.
3 I never eat biscuits or sweets/candy.
4 Put that garbage in the dustbin/trashcan.
5 The trousers look nice with that waistcoat/vest.
6 The lorry/truck came past us on the highway.
7 My apartment is on the fourth floor but I'm afraid there's no lift/elevator.
8 The people next door are on holiday/vacation. They'll be away for a fortnight.
9 We left the car in the car park/parking lot and took the subway to the centre.
10 My trainers are in the wardrobe/closet.

98.2 Now complete this table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>British English</th>
<th>American English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trousers</td>
<td>apartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trainers</td>
<td>high school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biscuits</td>
<td>garbage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highway</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortnight</td>
<td>subway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

98.3 This text includes some words used in American English. Underline them and write the British English words on the right-hand side.

It was getting near lunchtime and I needed some gas, so I left 1 the freeway and drove towards the nearest town. There was 2 a gas station just outside the town and I decided to stop and 3 have a look round. I put the car in a parking lot and took a 4 cab to the centre. It was midday and very hot, so I stopped at 5 a little cafe with tables on the sidewalk. I started talking to a 6 truck driver, who gave me a history of the town, and afterwards 7 he took me on a guided tour. It made a very nice break.

98.4 Here are some more American English words that are explained in different parts of this book. What is the British English equivalent?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>American English</th>
<th>British English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stand/wait in line</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drapes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>collect call</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attorney</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check (in a restaurant)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Formal and informal English

Most English that you learn can be used in a wide range of situations. But you will also hear or see language that is formal or informal, and sometimes very formal or very informal. You need to be more careful with this language because it may not be suitable in certain situations. (They are marked *fml* and *infml* throughout the book.)

A

Formal English

Formal English is more common in writing than speaking. It is found in notices, business letters, and legal English; but you will also hear examples in spoken English.

Cafe notice: Only food purchased (= bought) here may be eaten on the premises (= here).
Police statement in court: I apprehended (= stopped) the accused outside the supermarket.
Theatre announcement: The play will commence (= start) in two minutes.

Formal business situation: The meeting will resume (= start again) this afternoon at 2 p.m.

Lawyer: My client had a broken ankle. Thus (= so) he could not have driven the car.

Formal letter: I regret to inform you (= I am sorry to say) that we are unable to (= can't) grant (= give) you ...

Announcement: If you require (= need) further assistance (= more help), please contact ...
Outside a pub: Parking for patrons (= customers) only.

B

Informal English

In general, informal language is more common in spoken English than written English. Certain types of language are often informal:

- most uses of get are informal (See Unit 21 for more details)
- many phrasal verbs are informal (See Units 16 and 17 for more details)
- many idioms are informal (See Unit 18 for more details)

Here are some examples using words from above and other common informal words:

I had to go and pick up (= collect) the kids (= children) from school.
My flat is very handy for the shops. (= near the shops and very convenient)
I managed to fix up (= arrange/make) an appointment for 7.30.
I thought the book was terrific (= marvellous).
Most of the students are bright (= intelligent) but one or two are really thick (= stupid).
I offered him ten quid (= pounds) but the guy (= man) wasn't interested.
I reckon (= think) we'll get (= obtain) the money pretty (= quite) soon.
What's up? (= What's the matter?)
We must get in touch with them (= contact them) very soon.

Do you fancy going out? (= Would you like to go out?) Note the -ing form after fancy.
When you get (= reach/arrive) there, have a word with (= speak to) someone at reception.
I'm just going to the loo (= toilet).

C

Slang

This is a form of very informal language. It includes words used by particular groups of people (e.g. some young people may refer to ‘drugs’ as dope), and also words which many people think are impolite and unacceptable in most situations. You should probably not use these words, but some of them are quite common. The word piss (= urinate / go to the toilet) for example, is often used metaphorically in these slang expressions:

piss off (= go away); he was pissed (= drunk); it's pissing with rain (= it is raining heavily)
Exercises

99.1 Put the words on the left into the correct columns in the table.

| purchase | handy |   |   |
| loo | resume |   |   |
| thus | terrific |   |   |
| quid | commence |   |   |
| apprehend | reckon |   |   |
| guy |   |   |   |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>Informal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Now find a synonym for each of the words from this list.

therefore, toilet, convenient, catch/stop, start, man, start again, pound, think, fantastic, buy

99.2 Rewrite these sentences in more informal English.

1. When are you going to collect your bicycle?
2. Most of these children are very clever.
3. I think it’ll commence quite soon.
4. Would you like to go out for a meal?
5. My flat is five minutes from where I work, thus it is very convenient.
6. What’s the matter?
7. The man in the market wanted twenty pounds for this ring.
8. Where did you purchase that book?
9. They’ll never apprehend him.
10. I’m just going to the toilet.

99.3 Now rewrite this letter in more suitable formal English.

Dear Mr Collins

We’re really sorry to say that we can’t lend you the sum of five hundred quid that you need, but it may be possible to give you a loan for some of the money.

If you are still interested, do you fancy getting in touch with our main office to fix up an appointment with the assistant manager. He will be happy to talk to you about it.

Yours sincerely

99.4 Dictionaries will tell you if a word is formal or informal. Use your dictionary to find out if these underlined words are either formal or informal.

1. I couldn’t attend the meeting.
2. I thought the film was a drag.
3. Someone has pinched my pen.
4. He’s a nice bloke.
5. Smoking isn’t permitted.
Abbreviations and abbreviated words

A  Letters or words?

Some abbreviations are read as individual letters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BBC</td>
<td>British Broadcasting Organisation</td>
<td>MP Member of Parliament</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UN</td>
<td>United Nations</td>
<td>PM Prime Minister</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>EU European Union</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USA</td>
<td>United States of America</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some abbreviations are read as words.

OPEC /oʊpek/  Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries
AIDS /ɛdʒ/  Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome

Occasionally an abbreviation can be read as individual letters or a word.

VAT /væt/ or V-A-T  Value Added Tax (= a tax on goods/products in EU countries)

B  Written forms only

Some abbreviations are written forms only; they are still pronounced as full words.

Mr  /mɪstə/  St. Mark (Saint Mark)
Mrs  /mɪsɪz/ (= a married woman)  Dean St. (Dean Street)
Ms  /mɛs/ (= a woman who may be single or married)  Dr (Doctor)

C  Abbreviations as part of the language

Some abbreviations (from Latin) are used as part of the language.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning*</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>/etˈsetə/</td>
<td>and so on</td>
<td>et cetera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e.g.</td>
<td>E-G</td>
<td>for example</td>
<td>exempli gratia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.e.</td>
<td>I-E</td>
<td>that’s to say,</td>
<td>id est</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: This is also how we say them in spoken English; we write ‘e.g.’ and we say ‘for example’.

D  Shortened words

Some English words can be shortened, and it is very common to meet them in this form, particularly in spoken English Here are some of the most common:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>phone (telephone)</td>
<td>fridge (refrigerator)</td>
<td>bike (bicycle)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maths (mathematics)</td>
<td>exam (examination)</td>
<td>TV/telly (television)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>board (blackboard)</td>
<td>plane (aeroplane)</td>
<td>a paper (newspaper)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case (suitcase)</td>
<td>photo (photograph)</td>
<td>mum (mother)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dad (father)</td>
<td>ad/advert (advertisement)</td>
<td>sales rep (sales representative)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vet (veterinary surgeon)</td>
<td>PC (personal computer)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flu (influenza)</td>
<td>(= an illness like a cold but more serious)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lab (laboratory)</td>
<td>(= a special room where scientists work)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>language lab</td>
<td>(= room where students can listen and repeat using recording equipment)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Most of these words are explained in other parts of the book. Use the index on pages 248–265.
Exercises

100.1 What do these letters stand for? Complete each one.

1 BBC = British ........................................ 5 PM = Prime ........................................
2 MP = Member of ........................................ 6 UN = United ........................................
3 EU = European ......................................... 7 UK = ................................................
4 VAT = Value ........................................... 8 OPEC = Organisation of Petroleum ..............

100.2 Rewrite this note, making it more informal by using short forms where possible.

Michael

Peter had a mathematics examination this afternoon and then he had to take his bicycle to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch television while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the refrigerator. If there's a problem (for example, Dr Brown rings about the influenza vaccination), my telephone number is next to the photographs on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five o'clock.

Margaret (Peter's mother)

100.3 What abbreviations in written English are often used for these words or phrases?

1 for example ........................................ 4 in other words ........................................
2 and so on .......................................... 5 Mister ................................................
3 Street ............................................ 6 Doctor ..............................................

100.4 Complete these sentences with suitable abbreviations or shortened words opposite.

1 If you go to any of the Mediterranean islands ......... Sardinia or Corsica, it's a good idea to hire a car.
2 He didn't want to walk so he went on his ..........
3 A: Do you always listen to tapes in the classroom?
   B: No, we sometimes listen in the ............
4 I asked the teacher to write the word on the ...........
5 If you go there, you can buy books, pens, writing paper ...........
6 She was away from college last week because she had ........... I think she's better now, though.
7 When I decided to sell my records, I put an ........... in the paper and I had three replies the same day.
8 It was a warm day so I put the milk and butter in the ...........
9 If the tickets are very expensive ........... more than $75, don't buy any.
10 I put my ............... in a left luggage locker.

100.5 Here are some more abbreviations. What does each one stand for, and where will you see them?

PTO RSVP c/o asap
Answer key

Unit 1
There is no key for this unit.

Unit 2

2.1 Possible answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clothes/accessories</th>
<th>Railways</th>
<th>Words with -ful/-less suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tie</td>
<td>fare</td>
<td>homeless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put on</td>
<td>train</td>
<td>painful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blouse</td>
<td>get on</td>
<td>careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scarf</td>
<td>journey</td>
<td>helpful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jumper</td>
<td>station</td>
<td>thoughtless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacket</td>
<td>platform</td>
<td>useless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jeans</td>
<td>ticket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 a and c 8 b

2.3 The answers here will depend on your first language: a translation may or may not be suitable for all of the words. Example sentences are a good idea for most words, and there is usually something else that is also useful to know. Here are some suggestions:

dream: noun and verb; as a verb the past tense and past participle can be ‘dreamed’ but more common is ‘dreamt’ /dremt/. As a noun it is used with the verb ‘have’; also useful to learn ‘nightmare’ (= bad dream).

empty: ≠ full. Also useful to learn ‘half-empty’ (= ‘half-full’) but seems more negative.

concentrate: the main stress is on the first syllable, and it is followed by the preposition ‘on’. The noun is ‘concentration’.

forget: irregular verb (forget/forgot/forgotten); ≠ remember.

beard: a picture is the best way to show meaning; it is pronounced /brɔd/; also useful to know is ‘moustache’.

rescue: synonym = save; noun and verb.

nearly: synonym = almost; usually goes before the main verb except the verb ‘to be’, e.g. We nearly lost the game; It is nearly 4 o’clock.

knife: a picture is the best way to show meaning; the letter ‘k’ is silent; also important to know are ‘fork’ and ‘spoon’.

2.4 Possible answers

take: a picture/photo, time, a bath, a decision

do: your homework, research, someone a favour, an exam, sport, one’s best, the shopping (food)

make: a mistake, a decision, a mess, a noise, friends, money, coffee

have: a rest, a bath, a drink, a party, a good time

Unit 3

3.1 1 terrible 2 the same as ‘choose’ 3 a verb 4 an adjective 5 uncountable

6 complete/total/utter 7 You must choose between A and B; You can choose from ten different colours. 8 See answers to 7

3.2 1 choice 2 advise 3 piece 4 chaotic 5 clean 6 ‘homework’ is school or college work that you do at home; ‘housework’ is work that is necessary in a home e.g. washing, ironing, cleaning 7 win a game 8 gain / put on weight 9 order 10 Is this seat free/taken?
3.3 knife; bomb; psychology; receipt; castle; doubt; wrist; calm

3.4 1 = def. 2  2 = def. 4  3 = def. 1

Unit 4

4.1 1 in Seville (preposition)
2 I spent (pronoun)
3 a beautiful city (indefinite article)
4 expensive hotel (adjective)
5 of money (preposition)
6 wonderful hotel/place (noun)
7 to Spain (preposition)
8 never stays (adverb)

4.2 uncountable noun: time; traffic
plural noun: shorts; jeans
phrasal verb: get in; put on
idiom: get a move on

4.3 1 transitive  3 intransitive  5 transitive
2 intransitive  4 transitive  6 intransitive

4.4 Syllables and main stress (underlined)
One syllable: noun
Two syllables: English; decide; before
Three syllables: informal; understand; adjective; opposite; comfortable (Four syllables are possible here, but the ‘or’ is silent for most native speakers most of the time. /kʌmfləbl/)
Four syllables: education; preposition
Five syllables: pronunciation

4.5 1 adjectives
2 happily; correctly; luckily; surely; possibly
3 happy/content; correct/right; lucky/fortunate; sure/certain; no clear synonym for ‘possible’, although ‘maybe’ and ‘perhaps’ are very similar.
4 unhappy; incorrect; unlucky; unsure; impossible
5 correct

Unit 5

5.1 1 row /rɔʊ/ and cow /kɔʊ/
2 back /bæk/ and bacon /ˈbeɪkən/
3 soup /suːp/ and soap /soʊp/
4 vase /ˈvæz/ and razor /ˈreɪzər/

5.2 1 dream because it is pronounced /driːm/
2 flood because it is pronounced /flud/ 3 fast because it is pronounced /faːst/
4 wound because it is pronounced /wʊnd/
5 since because it is pronounced /sɪnсe/
6 symptom because it is pronounced /ˈsɪmpətɪm/
5.3 first  second  third
policy cathedral understand
palace police competition
opposite advertisement education
desert assistance
organise

/a/ appears in: cathedral /'kaθədrəl/ understand /'andaθənd/
police /'polis/ competition /'kɒmpətɪʃən/
opposite /'ɒpəsət/ advertisement /'ædvrətɪsmənt/
education /'edʒu'keɪʃən/ desert /'dezət/
assistance /'ɒsɪstəns/ organise /'ɔːɡənaɪz/

5.4 Same  Different
know/knife  island/islam (s in island is silent)
muscle/scissors  aisle/Christmas (s in aisle is silent)
climb/bomb  listen/western (t in listen is silent)
wrong/wrist  hand/handsome (d in handsome is silent)
calf/calm  honest/hope (h in honest is silent)

Unit 6

6.2 1 writing  2 a cassette  3 an OHT  4 notes/papers  5 notes/books  6 a plug
7 look up the meaning of a word  8 rub things out / erase them  9 photocopy things
10 because people can’t hear it very well

6.3 1 clean the board  2 turn up the tape recorder  3 borrow a dictionary  4 swap places
5 video a programme  6 do an exercise  7 correct mistakes  8 look up a word
9 plug in the OHP / tape recorder

6.5 A: What does ‘swap’ mean?
A: How do you pronounce it?
A: How do you spell it?
A: How do you use it in a sentence?

Unit 7

7.1 unhappy; impatient; impolite; illegal
incorrect; irregular; invisible; impossible
illegible; unfriendly; unemployed; dishonest
unpack; unlock; disagree; dislike

7.2 1 it’s illegal  3 he got undressed  5 she’s very impatient
2 it’s very untidy  4 it’s illegible  6 impolite

7.3 1 misunderstood  4 disagree  7 unlock  10 reopen
2 unpacked  5 redo  8 disliked  11 overworking
3 disappeared  6 overslept  9 redo/retake  12 unwrap

Unit 8

8.1 education; improvement; jogging; government; spelling; hesitation; arrangement;
stupidity; darkness; weakness; similarity; punctuality; sadness; popularity.
8.2  1 television  3 education  5 weakness  7 management
   2 election  4 government  6 stupidity  8 improvement

8.3  1 actor  4 singer  7 economist
   2 employer  5 murderer  8 translator
   3 footballer  6 psychologist  9 manager

8.4  1 writes reports/articles for newspapers
   2 dances in ballets
   3 directs films
   4 manages a bank
   5 employs people (employees)
   6 sings pop songs and makes records
   7 translates books and articles
   8 drives a lorry
   9 takes pictures (photographs)
  10 draws and paints things, e.g. people and landscapes

Unit 9

9.1 thoughtful/less  dirty  painful/less  comfortable
   attractive  careful/less  knowledgeable  famous
   creative  dangerous  (un)suitable  (un)reliable
   foggy  political  sunny  washable
   homeless  enjoyable  musical  (un)breakable

9.2  1 careful  4 knowledgeable or helpful  7 useful  10 undrinkable
   2 foggy  5 dangerous  8 reliable  11 inflexible
   3 famous  6 painful  9 industrial  12 homeless

9.3 painless; useless; careless; thoughtless; tactless*
*If someone is 'tactful' they are diplomatic, i.e. they always say the right things. If you are tactless, you are always saying the wrong thing and might be offending someone.

Opposites for the other words:
  wonderful (≠ terrible, awful)  awful (≠ wonderful, fantastic)  beautiful (≠ ugly)

9.4 Possible answers
   1 cloudy, sunny, foggy
   2 dangerous, careless, thoughtless, awful
   3 musical, creative, famous
   4 industrial, famous, beautiful, dirty, attractive
   5 famous, creative, knowledgeable
   6 reliable, comfortable, economical
   7 political, enjoyable, thoughtful
   8 ?

Unit 10

10.1  1 We waited a long time.
      2 I dreamt about you last night.
      3 We queued for half an hour.
      4 The holiday cost about £500.
      5 I replied to his letter yesterday.
10.2
1 I'll give him a ring this evening.
2 I go on a diet if I put on weight.
3 It was very hot, so we had a rest for a while after lunch.
4 I put on the brakes but I still couldn't stop in time.
5 He gave me a push.
6 Did you have a look in the paper?

10.3
1 same meaning
2 similar (but not exactly the same because ‘to water’ means ‘to pour water over something that is growing’.)
3 completely different (the verb ‘to book’ = ‘to reserve’)
4 completely different (‘a break’ is a rest; ‘to break a leg’ = to fracture the leg)
5 similar (but not exactly the same because ‘a run’ here is not just the action of running; it is an activity that the person chooses to do.)

Unit 11

11.1 Possible answers
Money: credit card, cheque book, box office (where you buy tickets), income tax
Roads: traffic lights, traffic jam, pedestrian crossing, parking meter, traffic warden
Things we wear: T-shirt, sunglasses, earring
People: baby-sitter, brother-in-law, film star, pop star

11.2
1 traffic jam 4 waiting room 7 income tax 9 first aid box
2 film star 5 baby sitter 8 parking meter 10 science fiction
3 alarm clock 6 sunglasses

11.3 Possible answers
1 sitting room; waiting room
2 pop star; rock star
3 birthday card; postcard
4 toothbrush (= what you clean your teeth with)
5 traffic jam, traffic warden
6 sunshade (= parasol); suntan (= when your body goes brown from the sun)
7 box office, postbox
8 hairdresser (= person who cuts your hair)

11.4 Possible answers
notebook (= a book of plain paper to write notes)
textbook (= a book used for study, especially in schools)
cookery book (= a book that tells you how to prepare and cook food)
telephone book (= the book with telephone numbers; also called a telephone directory)
bookcase (= a piece of furniture with shelves for books)
book shop
greetings card, e.g. birthday card, Christmas card
tavel card (= a ticket for travel on buses and trains for a period)
phone card (to use with certain telephones)
postcard
Unit 12

12.1 good-looking      brand-new      well-known      badly-written
easy-going           part-time       north-east      left-handed
ten-pound            first-class      short-sleeved    second-hand

12.2 Possible answers
well-done; well-made; well-built; well-dressed
badly-written; badly-designed
right-handed; left-handed
part-time; full-time
north-east; south-east

12.3 1 sleeved   4 new   7 part   10 minute   13 pound
      2 star      5 east/west 8 written 11 hand   14 known
      3 handed    6 behaved  9 off    12 looking 15 going

Unit 13

13.1 heavy smoker; heavy traffic; heavy rain
miss a bus; miss a person; miss a lesson
tell a joke; tell a lie; tell the truth; tell a story

13.2 1 dry wine   3 weak coffee  5 get off the bus  7 miss the bus
      2 a slight accent 4 a loud voice 6 tell a lie  8 get out of the car

13.3 1 terribly; missed  5 start        9 strong
      2 told            6 made         10 missed
      3 starting        7 vitally
      4 runs            8 heavy; highly

13.4 1 large size   2 wide range   3 broad shoulders  4 vast majority

Unit 14

14.1 Prepositions and possible replies
1 about; I've no idea.
2 at; French and German.
3 for; Her brother, I think.
4 for; Assistant manager.
5 to; I think it's a comedy programme.
6 about; She said the vegetables were cold.
7 for; The fact that she was late twice last week.
8 to; The man over there.
9 at; One of the students in her class.
10 in; Thrillers, I think.
11 on; How much it costs, I expect.
12 of; The fact that she can't get out. She's claustrophobic, you see.

14.2 1 c   2 j   3 a   4 l   5 h   6 b   7 d   8 k   9 g   10 i   11 e   12 f
Possible answers

1 to the waiter / about it
2 to my brother/sister
3 for a job with a charity / in a developing country
4 at English
5 from hay fever
6 in languages
7 on opera
8 of flying
9 from English people
10 London; by/at the number of parks

14.4 fond of; concentrate on; responsible for; rely on

Unit 15

15.1 1 on 3 on 5 on 7 for 9 on 11 in 13 by 15 on 17 at 19 by
2 by 4 on 6 by 8 in 10 by 12 on 14 by 16 in 18 at 20 at

15.2 1 by myself / on my own 5 on TV 9 at the moment
2 in time 6 by mistake 10 by chance
3 out of work 7 in the end
4 on the phone 8 at the end

15.3 1 No, she hit him by accident.
2 No, they went on foot (or by bus, by taxi, by train).
3 No, they’re here on business.
4 No, I saw it on TV (or ‘I heard about it on the radio’).
5 No, he did it by himself / on his own.
6 No, I’m in a hurry.

Unit 16

16.1 1 picked 3 gone 5 gets 7 look 9 go
2 found 4 get 6 gone 8 carry 10 run

16.2 Possible answers

1 her illness
2 bread/coffee/sugar etc.
3 in a dictionary
4 my boss / my parents / the neighbours / my teacher etc.
5 her coat / her jacket / her gloves etc.
6 the fire
7 the cat / the children etc.
8 the car
9 early/late etc.
10 by ten pounds / next week etc.

16.3 1 = def 6 2 = def 2 3 = def 4 4 = def 3 5 = def 1

16.4 See Page 36 for examples.
Unit 17

17.1 Possible answers
1. excuses/stories
2. on the bed / on the floor
3. the TV / the light / the fire
4. my flat / my house
5. the problem / the mess / the central heating
6. tonight / on Saturday evening
7. the second question / the final part
8. just outside London
9. on your salary / on seventy pounds
10. in a small town / by the sea

17.2
1. no
2. yes (put the fire out)
3. yes (turn the radio on)
4. no
5. no
6. yes (made that story up)
7. no
8. no
9. yes (turn the light off)
10. yes (leave this question out)

17.3 1. The cost of living is going up all the time and I find it quite difficult to get by on my salary. But I think I can probably carry on for a few months.
2. She told us to come in but then we had to take off our shoes and I had to put out my cigarette.
3. The teacher told the class to make up a story to go with the picture in their books, and then carry on with Exercise 3. She said they could all leave out Exercise 4.

17.4 Unit 21: get on (with someone); get on (= make progress); get up
Unit 47: grow up; go out (with); split up; break up
Unit 48: wake up; get up; stay in; go out; come round
Unit 56: take sth. off; hang sth. up; put sth. on; try sth. on
Unit 62: get on; get off; get into; get out (of)
Unit 75: turn sth. on/off; turn sth. up/down; switch on/off/over; plug sth. in

Unit 18

18.1 1. feel like = want/desire
2. for good = for ever
3. tied-up = busy
4. pulling sb.’s leg = joking by saying that something is true when in fact it is not true.
5. make do = manage

18.2 1. hang on
2. a short cut
3. go ahead
4. make it; Never mind
5. What’s up?
6. Keep an eye on
7. get a move on
8. make up your mind

18.3 1. start; matters
2. turns
3. -hand
4. talk
5. do; term

18.4 Examples
have something / nothing / a little in common = to have similar interests (If you ‘have nothing in common’, it means you don’t have similar interests.)
mad about something = to like something very much
get on someone’s nerves = to make someone angry or irritable by your behaviour.
Unit 19

19.1
1 do 3 make 5 take 7 do 9 doing 2 have 4 do 6 take and do 8 take and make 10 made

19.2
1 have a drink 5 I'm thirsty 8 take/make a decision 2 make 6 do my shopping 9 had a good time 3 do the housework 7 make money 10 making progress

19.3 Possible answers
1 My mother had to do a lot of housework, so I agreed to do the shopping for her.
2 A couple asked me to do them a favour and take a picture of them. or I made friends with a couple of people and took some photos of them.
3 I went to the disco and had a great time, but unfortunately I had to do an exam today, which was very difficult.

Unit 20

20.1 break a record / the law; catch the ball / a bus / a cold; keep in touch / a record; give my regards to / me a hand

20.2
1 see 3 give 5 catch 7 keep 9 break 2 keep 4 see 6 keep 8 caught 10 see

20.3
1 break the ice 3 catch a bus 2 give him/her a hand 4 broke the record

Unit 21

21.1
1 buy 3 arrive 5 obtain* 7 becoming 9 receive 2 fetch 4 became 6 receive 8 buy 10 arrive
*obtain is used more frequently in written English than in spoken English.

21.2
1 It's getting cold in here. 4 It's getting late 2 I'm getting hungry 5 It's getting dark 3 I'm getting hot 6 I'm getting worse at English

21.3
1 getting ready to go out 4 get on very well with my boss 2 get dressed very quickly 5 get rid of most of these chairs 3 get to know people in this country 6 How are you getting on?

Unit 22

22.1
1 going 2 coming 3 go 4 take 5 taking ('bringing' is also possible here if the speaker already imagines himself at the party) 6 bring 7 go 8 come

22.2
1 doing 3 turn 5 take me 2 try 4 How are you? 6 How are you getting on?

22.3
1 shopping 3 for a drink 5 for a swim 2 for a meal / for something to eat 4 sightseeing; for a drive/walk 6 riding

22.4
1 deaf 2 bankrupt 3 grey 4 bald 5 mad
Unit 23

23.1
1 very/terribly/really/awfully
2 I'm; held; problem
3 keep; mind
4 kind

23.2 Possible answers
1 I'm terribly sorry / I beg your pardon.
2 I'm sorry I'm late but I missed the bus.
3 Oh thank you. That's very kind of you.
4 Don't worry. It doesn't matter.
5 Thank you for inviting me. / Thank you for a lovely dinner/meal.
6 Never mind. Don't worry. I'll sort it out.
7 I would like to apologise for not coming to your office last week. Unfortunately, ...
8 Please accept our apologies for the delay in sending the information we promised you.
   Unfortunately we had a fire at the factory last month, and this has resulted in ...

Unit 24

24.1
A: Would you like to go out this evening?
B: I'm afraid I haven't got any money. (omit 'but')
A: That's OK, I'll pay. How about going to see a film?
B: No, actually I think I'd rather stay at home and do my homework? (omit 'to' before 'rather')
A: Why don't you do your homework this afternoon?
B: I'm busy this afternoon.
A: OK. How about tomorrow evening, then?
B: Yeah fine. / Good idea.
A: Great. What film shall we go to?
B: I don't mind.

24.2
1 possibly; sure / of course
2 wondering; love to
3 shall; don't; good/great idea
4 shall; how about; could; rather; like
5 would; mind

24.3 Possible answers
1 Yeah sure
2 Yes of course
3 I'm afraid not
4 Yes, I'd love to
5 I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't
6 Yeah great
7 Yes that's a good idea
8 Yes if you like

Unit 25

25.1 Any combination of these question beginnings:
What do you think of ...
What do you feel about ...
What are your feelings about ...

25.2
1 of; personally (‘actually’ would also be correct here)
2 according
3 extent
4 concerned
5 totally (‘completely’ would also be correct here)
25.3 Possible answers
1 Personaly I don't think you can learn a language in three months.
2 In my opinion the club needs to buy new players.
3 Yes, I agree with you.
4 The newspaper says that terrorists started the fire.
5 I partly agree with her.

25.4 Possible answers
1 Yeah maybe, but I think there are lots of women who don't want to do that.
2 Yes I agree to some extent, but how do you decide if someone doesn't want to work?
3 Yes, I think you're right.
4 You could be right but don't you think that more people would take drugs if we did that?
5 Yes I agree to a large extent - it can lead to a lot of conflict between countries.

Unit 26

26.1 1 Happy Christmas or Merry Christmas
2 Happy Birthday (or Many Happy Returns)
3 Happy New Year
4 Congratulations
5 Good luck
6 See you soon

26.2 1 How do you do?; How do you do?
2 Bless you
3 Have a nice/good weekend; Yes, same to you.
4 Cheers; Cheers

26.3 1 ‘Excuse me’ is enough here, but you could add a little more, e.g. ‘Excuse me for one moment’ or ‘Excuse me. I won’t be long’.
2 Sorry? (with rising intonation)
3 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. / Nice to have met you.
4 Excuse me.
5 Goodnight. (See you in the morning / tomorrow.)
6 Excuse me. (You would probably add something like ‘I think you’ve dropped something’.)
7 Congratulations
8 Good luck

26.4 We use ‘hard luck’ to someone who has just failed in something, e.g. failed an exam
We ask people to ‘say cheese’ when we are about to take a picture of them.
We say ‘watch out’ as a warning e.g. to warn someone crossing a road that a cyclist is right behind them and could hit them if they aren’t careful.
We say ‘I beg your pardon’ in many situations when we also say ‘sorry’ e.g. you step on someone’s foot; you interrupt someone. It is more formal.
We say ‘I’ve no idea’ to show that we definitely do not know the answer to something; in some cases we say it because we are annoyed at being asked the question.

Unit 27

27.1 1 I need some information.
2 We had lovely weather.
3 The furniture is very old.
4 I'm looking for a new pair of jeans. or I'm looking for some new jeans.
5 Your hair is getting very long.
6 Do you have any scissors? or Do you have a pair of scissors?
We had a lot of homework yesterday.
Do you think she's making progress with her English?
These trousers are too small.
She gave me some good advice.

countable: cup; grape; coin

uncountable: butter; travel; housework; money; spaghetti; insurance

countable and uncountable:
television  U e.g. Television is bad for your eyes.
            C e.g. We bought a new television yesterday.
work       U e.g. Most people enjoy their work.
            C e.g. The Mona Lisa is a famous work of art.
coffee     U e.g. I love coffee.
            C e.g. I sat down and ordered a coffee (i.e. cup of coffee).

some scissors / a pair of scissors
some sunglasses / a pair of sunglasses
some advice
some furniture

some scales
some headphones
some / a pair of (warm) pyjamas
to do more homework

uncountable nouns: traffic; news
plural nouns: roadworks; authorities

Unit 28

to work  3 going  5 to drive / driving  7 to work / working  9 to finish
to help  4 to take  6 eating  8 going  10 helping

Possible ways to complete Part C.

1 to have a successful career; to be happy; to have children
2 doing housework; waiting at bus stops; going to the dentist
3 getting up late; walking in the country; going shopping
4 walking long distances; doing sport; drinking coffee
5 to live until they are 75; to have some disappointments; to meet a person they will love
6 making their bed; cooking their dinner; tidying up
7 come home at a certain time; tidy their own rooms; get up at a certain time
8 get up when they like; do what they like; have parties at their home

He let her go on holiday with her friends.
He offered to lend her the money for the hotel.
He refused to pay for the flight and her entertainment.
She promised to bring him back a present and repay her loan in six months.
They decided to go to the south of France for two weeks.

Unit 29

She said the film was terrible.
He told me it's not possible.
Can you explain what to do?
She suggested that we go to ... / she suggested going to ...
Can we discuss my report?
I want him to leave.
I apologised for my mistake.
She advised me to buy a dictionary.
She insisted on paying.
29.1 1 showed  3 apologise  5 persuaded  7 confirm  9 explained
2 complain  4 warn  6 insisted  8 blamed  10 discussed

29.3 Possible answers
1 that we go for a meal.
2 them to be quiet.
3 it was great.
4 it in class.
5 on going with her / that we go together

29.4 order
1 + object, e.g. He ordered a meal.
2 + object + infinitive, e.g. He ordered us to leave.

recommend
1 + object, e.g. She recommended the school.
2 + ‘that’ clause, e.g. She recommended that we stay in a hotel.
3 + preposition, e.g. What would you recommend for young children?
4 + (object) + -ing, e.g. I recommend (you) reading the book before you see the film.

prevent
1 + object, e.g. I couldn’t prevent the accident.
2 + object + preposition, e.g. They prevented us from leaving.

Unit 30

30.1 big/enormous or huge hot/boiling
small/tiny cold/freezing
tired/exhausted bad/awful or terrible or dreadful
surprised/astonished hungry/starving
interesting/fascinating frightened/terrified

30.2 Sample answer
Arrived on Sunday. The hotel is fantastic – we’ve got a huge room and the food is wonderful. It’s been boiling every day so far, so we’ve spent most of the time on the beach, along with everyone else – it’s absolutely packed. But the sea is actually freezing – that’s because it’s the Atlantic coast, I suppose.

Tomorrow we’re going to walk to a tiny seaside village about ten kilometres from here – I imagine I’ll be really exhausted by the time we get back, but it does sound a fascinating place and I’m looking forward to it.

I’ll write again in a couple of days and tell you about it. Until then,

30.3 1 exhausted  2 fascinating  3 terrifying  4 astonished  5 freezing
30.4 1 exhausted  2 disappointed  3 embarrassed  4 confused  5 astonished

Unit 31

31.1 1 on  2 in  3 at  4 at  5 in  6 on  7 on  8 at  9 on  10 in

31.2 1 No, behind the picture.
2 No, down the hill.
3 No, under the fence.
4 No, I saw her get out of the car.
5 No, above the clouds.
6 No, the flat below me.
Unit 32

32.1 1 My brother often visits us on Sunday.
2 She hardly ever phones me.
3 I have never broken my leg.
4 I hardly saw him during his visit.
5 I occasionally get up early, (‘occasionally’ could also begin or end the sentence)
6 She is always early for work on a Monday.

32.2 1 hardly ever / rarely  2 hardly  3 nearly  4 slightly  5 incredibly

32.3 1 No it was rather interesting (actually)
2 No they were rather quiet (actually)
3 No, it’s rather clean (actually)
4 No, it was rather good (actually)

32.4 1 I thought they were extremely good.
2 He’s been getting very good marks in his exams.
3 John said the flat was fairly / quite / a bit small.
4 They said it was a bit boring.
5 The clothes were quite/fairly expensive.

Unit 33

33.1 1 get  2 while  3 leaving  4 eventually/finally  5 just as  6 while/as

33.2 Possible answers
1 we went for a swim.
2 I have finished here.
3 leaving.
4 I was getting out of the car.
5 John looked up the other half.
6 the bus arrived.
7 you are not insured to drive it.
8 I was coming round the corner.

33.3 Possible answers
1 And for another, I’ve got lots of work to do.
2 Then finally we came back through the Loire valley and stayed in Tours for a couple of days.
3 besides/anyway, we can’t really afford it.

33.4 Possible answer
Dear Sir
I have just returned from a weekend break at The Royal Malvern Hotel and I am writing to express my dissatisfaction with the food and service provided in your restaurant.

To begin with, there was very little variety in the food and sometimes no choice at all. Secondly, the service was very slow most of the time and we had to wait half an hour between courses. And finally, when we complained to the head waiter about these delays, he was very rude and the service did not improve.

I sincerely hope that immediate action will be taken to improve this situation, and I shall expect a letter of apology and explanation for this very poor standard of service in a hotel with such a fine reputation.

Yours faithfully
**Unit 34**

34.1 1 although 4 even though 7 however 10 also
2 in spite of 5 whereas 8 too / as well
3 in spite of / despite 6 In addition / Moreover 9 on the other hand

34.2 He went to school today even though he didn't feel very well. He always did his best at school whereas most of his friends were very lazy. He's got the right qualifications. What's more, he's the most experienced. He didn't pass the exam in spite of the help I gave him. He decided to take the job. However, the pay isn't very good.

34.3 1 despite / in spite of
2 whereas
3 furthermore / in addition / moreover / what's more
4 although / even though / despite the fact that
5 however / on the other hand
6 as well / too

34.4 Possible answers
1 she spoke very quickly. 4 it's much cheaper.
2 the others couldn't. 5 I think they'll probably pass.
3 the bad weather. 6 I wasn't bored at all.

**Unit 35**

35.1 1 similar
2 unlike / different from
3 a lot in common
4 in common
5 live at home / have jobs / like sport / want to become managers
6 went to university

35.2 1 Martin is very different from his brother.
2 The flats are very good value compared with/to the houses.
3 Everyone in the class passed the exam except Carla.
4 The two boys have nothing in common.
5 You don't have to wear a tie apart from (on) Saturday(s).

35.3 1 otherwise 2 in case 3 unless 4 as long as

35.4 Possible answers
1 have to finish it at the weekend.
2 a member.
3 pay me back before next week.
4 my cousin comes to stay for a few days.
5 I have to.
6 I want to buy anything.
**Unit 36**

36.1 1 I didn’t phone you as/since/because it was very late. or
It was very late so I didn’t phone you.
2 I turned up the radio in the lounge so (that) I could hear it in the kitchen.
3 The restaurant was full so we went to the bar next door. or
We went to the bar next door as/since/because the restaurant was full.
4 I stayed at home as/since/because I was expecting a phone call. or
I was expecting a phone call so I stayed at home.
5 It’s a very large city so you have to use public transport a lot. or
You have to use public transport a lot as/since/because it’s a very large city.
6 I learnt to drive so that my mother didn’t have to take me to ...
I learnt to drive, so my mother didn’t have to take me to ...

36.2 It is possible to use ‘because of / due to / owing to’ in all of the answers.
1 She got the job because of her excellent qualifications.
2 We couldn’t eat outside owing to the terrible weather.
3 She had to stay at home because of her broken ankle.
4 The referee had to stop the game owing to the bad light.
5 The flowers died because of the dry weather.
6 Owing to the heavy traffic, I was half an hour late, or
I was half an hour late due to the heavy traffic

36.3 1 as/since 2 cause / lead to 3 so that 4 lead to 5 therefore

36.4 Possible answers
1 I want to improve my English because I will need it in my job very soon.
2 I bought myself a walkman so that I could listen to English cassettes on the bus.
3 I study English at the weekend as I am very busy during the week.
4 I always write words down in my notebook so that I don’t forget them.
5 I don’t get many opportunities to practise my English. Consequently I find it difficult to
remember everything I study.
6 My brother has got a number of American friends. As a result, he gets a lot of opportunities to
practise his English.
7 If he could speak almost perfect English, it could lead to a job in Britain or America.
8 Some people find English difficult because of the pronunciation.

**Unit 37**

37.1 1 an ocean 4 a desert 7 a group of islands 10 mountain
2 a mountain range 5 a jungle (a rainforest) 8 a continent 11 Lakes
3 a country 6 a sea 9 islands 12 stars

37.2 My journey took me across the Atlantic Ocean from Europe to South America. I travelled through
the Amazon rainforest and down through the interior of Brazil as far as the Iguacu Falls. From
there I headed north again, through Bolivia, round Lake Titikaka and up to Cuzco. Then I crossed
the Andes and finally arrived in Lima. For the last part of the journey I flew to Jamaica in the
West Indies.

37.3 1 hurricane 2 flood 3 drought 4 earthquake 5 volcano
Unit 38

38.1 1 foggy  2 snowing  3 cloudy  4 pouring with rain  5 ic(e)y  6 sunny

38.2 1 false  3 true  5 false  7 false  9 true
2 true  4 true  6 true  8 true  10 false

38.3 *The missing words are*

breeze; gale
boiling; freezing

38.4 1 blows  2 hot  3 winds  4 snows  5 spell  6 heavy  7 humid

Unit 39

39.1 1 plant trees (you can ‘plant plants’ but it sounds unnatural. In this case you would probably say: ‘We’re going to put some plants in’.)
2 water trees/plants
3 pick apples
4 extract coal
5 grow wheat/apples/trees/plants
6 slaughter cows

39.2 1 true  2 true  4 true
3 false (a long period without rain)  6 false

39.3 1 a tin can  3 a knife with a steel blade  5 a gold wedding ring
2 a silver spoon  4 a frying pan with a copper base  6 these iron bars are very strong

39.4 1 vegetable  2 metal  3 dairy  4 cereal  5 crop(s)

Unit 40

40.1 1 same /æ/  5 same /æ/  8 different /ə/; /ɔ:/
2 different /eɪ/; /əʊ/  6 different /ʌ/; /ʊ/  9 same /ʊ/;
3 different /eə/; /iə/  7 different /æ/; /ɛ/  10 same /əʊ/;
4 different /ɡ/; /ɒ/;

40.2 *Suggested answers*

*Farm animals:* pig, cow, horse, chicken, sheep, goat
*Wild animals:* lion, tiger, elephant, monkey, camel, leopard, bear
*Insects:* fly, mosquito, wasp, ant, butterfly

40.3 *Possible answers*

1 eagles  6 blue whales
2 whales or sharks  7 monkeys or giraffes
3 monkeys or dogs are the most probable answer  8 snakes
4 leopards, lions, tigers and other big cats  9 elephants
5 camels  10 sheep
40.4 Possible answers
1 mouse/rabbit
2 pigs/horses/chickens
3 leopards (panthers and cheetahs would also be possible)
4 ants/flies/wasps (cockroaches would also be possible)
5 camels

40.5 golden eagle = 270 kph when they dive (= fly in a downward direction)
lion = 80 kph  shark = 64 kph  rabbit = 56 kph  elephant = 40 kph  pig = 18 kph
spider = 1.88 kph  snail = 0.05 kph

Unit 41
41.1 1 Great Britain, the United States of America, Canada, Australia, New Zealand
2 Portuguese
3 Dutch
4 Swiss-German, French, Italian. A small number of people also speak a language called Romansch.
5 Arabic
6 Swedish
7 Spanish
8 Egyptian
9 Hebrew
10 China

41.2 Japan Japanese Brazilian Egyptian Arabic Italian Austria Australia
Chinese Portuguese Saudi Arabia
Words ending -ia usually have the stress on the third syllable from the end.
Words ending -ian usually have the main stress on the second syllable from the end.
Words ending -ese usually have the stress on the final syllable, i.e. on the -ese.

41.3 Possible answers
1 The Japanese  3 Brazilians  5 The Swiss
2 Israelis  4 The British  6 Greeks

41.4 1 Thailand  3 Turkey  5 Egypt  7 Greece  9 Sweden
2 Argentina  4 South Korea  6 Saudi Arabia  8 Israel  10 Portugal

41.5 1 Russian  4 Japanese  7 Dutch  10 French
2 Korean  5 Greek  8 Spanish  11 Swedish
3 Italian  6 Chinese  9 Swiss German

Unit 42
42.1 1 forehead  8 foot  15 wrist
2 cheek  9 toe  16 hand
3 chin  10 finger  17 bottom
4 chest  11 neck  18 thigh
5 arm  12 shoulder  19 heel
6 hip  13 waist
7 knee  14 elbow
42.2  1 blow your nose  5 bend your knees  
      2 shake hands  6 nod your head  
      3 comb your hair  7 bite your nails  
      4 fold your arms

42.3  1 they’re happy or being polite  
      2 running  
      3 they’re happy or when someone says something funny  
      4 when they’re nervous  
      5 when they have a cold  
      6 when they want to say ‘no’  
      7 when they mean ‘yes’  
      8 when they’re sad, unhappy, or possibly when they’re very happy  
      9 they’re tired or bored

42.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C</th>
<th>E</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>O</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>K</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 43

43.1  1 hair  5 shoulders  9 looking  
      2 skin  6 chests  10 hair/skin/eyes  
      3 hair  7 beard/moustache  
      4 height/build  8 arms/legs

43.2  1 beautiful/pretty  2 plain  3 overweight  4 thin  5 good-looking/handsome

43.3  What does he/she look like?  
      How tall is he/she?  
      How much does he/she weigh?

Unit 44

44.1  Positive  Negative
      clever  stupid  
      nice  unpleasant  
      relaxed  tense  
      hard-working  lazy  
      cheerful  miserable  
      generous  mean

44.2  unkind; unfriendly; unreliable; unambitious; unpleasant  
      inflexible; insensitive  
      dishonest

44.3  1 mean  5 lazy  
      2 has no initiative / doesn't use her initiative  6 shy  
      3 unreliable  7 flexible  
      4 punctual  8 sensitive  
      9 insensitive  10 ambitious

224  English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate)
44.4 punctuality  optimism/optimist (person)  reliability  laziness
confidence  generosity  ambition  stupidity
sensitivity  strength  flexibility  shyness

Unit 45

45.1 anger; sadness; happiness; pride; jealousy; embarrassment

45.2 1 b  2 f  3 e  4 a  5 c  6 d

45.4 1 people strolling  4 someone whispering
2 soldiers marching  5 someone shouting and pointing his finger at someone
3 someone pressing a button

45.5 1 glanced  3 strolled  5 stared
2 whispered  4 march  6 punched

Unit 46

46.1 1 John is Jill’s brother-in-law.
2 Timothy is Jill’s nephew.
3 Eve and Ana are Timothy’s cousins.
4 Eve is Sheila’s niece.
5 Albert Dodds is Tom’s grandfather.
6 Barry is Eve’s uncle.
7 Susan is Timothy’s aunt.
8 As Paul died in 1995, Jill is a widow.
9 Tom is Mary’s grandson.
10 The only two people who are not related are John and Sheila.

Unit 47

47.1 1 toddler  5 their early thirties  9 an adult
2 retired  6 elderly  10 adolescence
3 mid twenties  7 baby
4 in her late forties / middle-aged  8 teenager

47.2 1 true
2 false: He grew up in the south of England.
3 false: He went out with Anthea for three years.
4 false: They split up because they had lots of rows.
5 true
6 false: Maureen got pregnant a year after they got married.
7 false: Maureen is now expecting her second child.
8 false: Sam left Maureen.

47.3 1 e  2 c  3 a  4 f  5 i  6 h  7 d  8 b  9 g

Unit 48

48.1 have lunch; dinner; a nap; a lie-in; a late night / an early night; a wash; a shave; a bath; a break; a rest.

48.2 1 fall asleep  4 play cards  7 feed the dog
2 do the ironing  5 go to bed  8 get up early
3 have a rest  6 clean my teeth
**Unit 49**

**49.1**
1 yes  
2 yes  
3 no  
4 shut  
5 three  
6 no  
7 no  
8 no

**49.2**
1 gate; path; doorbell  
2 climb; lift  
3 view  
4 rent  
5 belongs; condition  
6 heat; heating

**49.3**
*Possible answers*

**Positive**
- the rooms are very light
- a good view
- quiet
- large rooms
- in good condition

**Negative**
- the rooms are very dark
- no view
- noisy
- small rooms
- in bad condition
- draughty

**Unit 50**

**50.1**
*Possible answers*

1 sleep  
2 cooking and washing-up  
3 wash and shower (and bath)  
4 sit and relax (and watch TV)  
5 eat meals  
6 guests sleep / where you keep things you don’t use all the time.  
7 work/study  
8 you have a washing machine / tumble dryer (= machine to dry clothes)

**50.2**
1 in the fridge  
2 in the oven  
3 in the washing machine  
4 in the dishwasher  
5 in the cupboard  
6 in the cupboard

**50.3**
sink; curtains; carpet; dishwasher; kettle; sofa; oven; fridge; armchair; cupboard; saucepan

**50.4**
1 in  
2 out; back  
3 on; in  
4 on  
5 in  
6 out; on

**50.6**
*Possible answers*

1 oven, TV, radio, hi-fi, washing machine, dishwasher  
2 plates, cups, saucers, saucepans, glasses, knives and forks  
3 chair, stool, armchair, sofa  
4 kettle, saucepan

**Unit 51**

**51.1**
1 I cleaned my teeth  
2 I went to sleep  
3 I set the alarm clock  
4 I switched off the light  
5 I had a wash  
6 I put on my pyjamas  
7 I got into bed

Possible order: 5, 1 (or 1, 5), 6, 3, (could be 3, 6), 7, 4, 2. There are, of course, other variations e.g. you might get into bed and then set the alarm clock; etc.
51.2 1 She did the shopping. 4 She hoovered the carpet / did the hoovering.
2 She ironed something. 5 She did the washing.
3 She did the washing-up. 6 She made the bed.

51.3 1 no 3 yes 5 no 7 yes
2 two 4 three 6 yes 8 no

Unit 52

52.1 Infinitive Past tense Past participle
burn burnt (also burned) burnt (also burned)
break broke broken
drop dropped dropped
spill spilt (also spilled) spilt (also spilled)
trip tripped tripped
lose lost lost
leave left left

52.2 1 f 2 g 3 e 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 d

52.3 1 someone broke some glasses
2 he has a stain on his trousers
3 he burnt his shirt

52.4 Possible answers
1 I dropped it. 5 I’m afraid I lost it.
2 I’m afraid there’s something wrong with it. 6 I left it at home.
3 I tripped over. 7 It’s not working.
4 It’s not working properly. 8 It’s out of order.

Unit 53

53.1 1 sold; bought 3 paid 5 won
2 lost; cost; found 4 gave; spent 6 wasted

53.2 1 How much is your gold ring worth?
2 I’m afraid I can’t afford it. or I’m afraid I can’t afford to go.
3 Could you lend me some money?
4 How much did your dictionary cost? or
   How much did you pay for your dictionary?

53.3 1 yes 2 no 3 yes 4 no 5 yes 6 no 7 no 8 no

Unit 54

54.1 1 a cough, sore throat, sneezing
2 a cough, sore throat, sneezing, temperature, aching muscles
3 runny nose, sneezing, sore eyes
4 headache
5 keep going to the toilet
6 difficulty in breathing

54.2 1 different /dз/, /dзә/ 4 different /au/, /ә/
2 same /k/ 5 different /аu/, /ә/
3 same /ә/ 6 different /п/, /ә/
I had terrible toothache, so I made an appointment to see the dentist. He had a look at the tooth and decided that I needed a filling. It was quite a big one, so I had an injection first. Afterwards it felt so much better.

Unit 55

Possible answers

1 hurts  3 ache  5 lung  7 asthma  9 myself
2 attack 4 pain  6 prescription 8 disease 10 aches

Unit 55

Possible answers

1 I was preparing the dinner and I cut my finger on the vegetable knife.
2 he was in a fight and someone gave him a black eye.
3 I was running for a bus and I hit my foot on something on the pavement and fell over.
4 We were running for the same ball; I'm afraid I didn't see him and he didn't see me, and we collided.

Unit 56

Possible answers

shoes, socks, jeans, trousers, shorts, gloves, tights

4, 7, 1, 3, 5, 9, 2, 8, 6

an earring, a ring, a button, a pocket, a necklace, gloves.

Most likely answers

1 blouse or *top; skirt  3 tie; shirt  5 too; enough
2 suit; trousers  4 enough; size
(*top is a general word)

Possible answers

worn by women: dress, blouse, skirt, tights, necklace
worn by both: hat, gloves, jeans, trousers, jacket, scarf, coat, shirt

Unit 57

1 clothes  3 electrical appliances  5 toys
2 furniture  4 household goods  6 stationery
57.2 newsagent: envelopes, a newspaper
chemist: toothbrush, aspirin
department store: envelopes, an armchair, gloves (and possibly the apples, carrots, coca cola, chicken and a loaf of bread)
butcher: a chicken
greengrocer: apples and carrots
supermarket: a chicken, a toothbrush, a loaf of bread, coca cola, apples, carrots, a newspaper

Other things you could buy in each shop:
newsagent: cigarettes, sweets, greeting cards
chemist: soap, shampoo, perfume, toothpaste
department store: clothes, washing machines, saucepans
butcher: steak, sausages, bacon, lamb
greengrocer: onions, oranges, peas, lemons
supermarket: coffee, wine, cakes, biscuits, cheese

57.3 1 boutique 3 shop/sales assistant 5 till / cash desk 7 butcher('s)
2 shopping centre 4 changing/fitting room 6 window shopping 8 chemist('s)

57.4 1 looking for 3 being served 5 take it
2 size 4 changing room 6 till / cash desk

Unit 58

58.1 1 peas/potato; peach/pear
2 beans; banana
3 mushroom; melon
4 carrot/ cauliflower/cabbage; cherry
5 aubergine; apple

58.2 lettuce/chicken /l\/onion/mushroom /æ/
/orange/cauliflower /o/ banana/melon /æ/
aubergine/tomato /au/ salmon/lamb /æ/ salmon

58.3 1 salmon; the others are types of meat but salmon is a fish
2 salmon; the others are types of shellfish but salmon is a fish
3 aubergine; the others are found in salad but aubergine isn’t
4 peach; the others are vegetables but a peach is a fruit
5 mussels; the others are types of meat but mussels is a shellfish

58.4 Most likely answers:
always  usually  never
cherries  apples  bananas
grapes  peaches  pineapples
strawberries  pears  melons

English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate) 229
Unit 59

59.2 1 chicken liver pate
2 tagliatelle with courgettes, cream and bacon
3 fillet steak
4 baked salmon
5 steak with a pepper sauce
6 breast of chicken in a white wine sauce
7 fillet steak
8 ice cream and chocolate mousse
9 fruit salad
10 probably the soup, salmon, and fruit salad

59.3 Possible answers
lemon – bitter  chicken – bland or tender  honey – sweet  bacon – salty or fatty or tasty
ice cream – sweet  fillet steak – tender or fatty or lean  chillies – hot and spicy
avocado – bland

Unit 60

60.1 Towns  Villages
noisy quiet and peaceful
dirty and polluted clean air
exciting boring
stressful relaxing
crowded lots of open space
lots to do nothing to do in the evening
dangerous safe

60.2 Possible answers
Town Country Town and country
factories fields gates
shopping centres woods car parks
pollution tractors footpaths
night-life villages libraries
Town Hall, suburbs valleys traffic

60.3 1 gate  3 path  5 valley  7 valley
2 tractor  4 field  6 wood  8 village

Unit 61

61.1 Go along this road and take the first turning at the junction. Then you keep going and turn right when you get to the school. Then turn right again into Maldon Road, and the bank is on the left-hand side just after the cinema.

61.2 1 fasten your seat belt; get in / start 4 braked; crashed 7 traffic jam
2 injured; damaged 5 pavement 8 lane; overtook
3 rush hour 6 broke down

61.3 1 park  4 one lane 7 lights
2 speed limit  5 motorway 8 bridge
3 turn right  6 park 9 roadworks
Unit 62

62.1  1 ride  3 fares  5 fly  7 take  
2 get in  4 run  6 timetable  8 missed

62.2 Possible answers
1 bus fare; train fare; air fare; taxi fare
2 get on the bus; get on the coach; get on the train; get on the plane
3 bus station; railway station; coach station
4 bus driver; train driver; taxi driver; van driver
5 get in the car; get in the taxi; get in the van. (People also sometimes say ‘get in the bus’ or ‘get in the train’.)
6 train journey; bus journey; taxi journey; coach journey

62.3  1 coach  2 van  3 lorry  4 motorbike  5 bike

62.4  1 platform  3 full up  5 punctual  7 journey
2 bus stop  4 arrival  6 queue  8 due

Unit 63

63.1  1 earn £500  3 pay income tax  5 deal with clients
2 work overtime  4 go to meetings  6 run a shop

63.2  1 What’s your job?
2 My salary is $50,000.
3 My total income is £30,000.
4 I work for a pharmaceutical company.
5 My job involves looking after and maintaining all the hardware.
6 I’m in charge of one of the smaller departments.

63.3 A: What are your working hours?
A: Do you do/work any overtime?
A: How much holiday / how many weeks holiday do you get?
A: Teachers don’t earn very much, do they?

Unit 64

64.1 Possible answers
1 a lawyer or doctor  5 a policeman  9 a doctor, nurse, surgeon, or vet
2 a pilot  6 a vet  10 a soldier, sailor, or someone in the air force
3 a sailor  7 a fireman
4 a mechanic  8 an accountant

64.2 Possible answers
1 an architect designs buildings  6 plans the construction of roads and bridges
2 lectures in a university  7 builds walls
3 controls the financial affairs of a company  8 buys and sells shares
4 treats animals  9 repairs cars
5 advises people on legal problems  10 operates on people

64.3  1 Really. When did he join the army?
2 Really. When did he join the navy?  3 Really. When did he join the air force?
4 Really. When did he join the fire brigade?
64.4 Possible answers
an architect to design your house
a lawyer to give you legal advice
a carpenter to make cupboards and fit doors
a plumber to fit the kitchen and bathroom
an electrician to do all the electrical work
an accountant to calculate how much everything will cost

Unit 65

65.1 1 sacked/dismissed 3 resigned 5 prospects 7 employees
2 unemployed 4 promoted 6 retired

65.2 1 b 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 f 6 c

65.3 1 part-time 3 challenge 5 rise 7 over
2 course 4 market 6 her 8 apply

65.4 Verb General noun Personal noun
promote promotion –
employ employment employer (boss)/employee (worker)
resign resignation –
retire retirement –
train training trainer (gives the training) / trainee (receives it)

Unit 66

66.1 Possible answers
1 write: a letter, a report, a memo, a cheque
2 send: a letter, a report, a fax, an invoice
3 make: phone calls, products, the tea, mistakes
4 arrange: meetings, conferences, visits, training courses

66.2 1 noticeboard 3 filing cabinet; briefcase 5 wastepaper basket/bin
2 assembly line 4 paperwork

66.3 1 warehouse 3 goods 5 diary 7 retailer
2 automation 4 calendar 6 invoice 8 drawer

66.4 1 manufactured 4 stored
2 fit 5 deliver (‘send’ would also be possible)
3 examines/checks

Unit 67

67.1 1 loan 3 inflation 5 it breaks even
2 interest 4 aims/goals/objectives 6 recession

67.2 1 gradual 3 thriving 5 aims
2 sharp 4 expanding 6 gone up

67.3 1 rose 3 sharp fall 5 rose sharply
2 fell slightly 4 steady rise 6 rose
67.4 1 public expenditure  3 tax cuts  5 raw material(s)
2 political/economic stability  4 interest/inflation rate*  6 profit and loss
*(Rate of inflation is also commonly used.)

Unit 68
68.1 product, price, promotion, place
68.2 sales manager; sales figures; sales forecast; market share; market leader; market research;
marketing manager; marketing department.
1 forecast  3 figures  5 research
2 manager; department  4 leader; share
68.3 1 representative  3 products  5 consumers
2 products  4 competitors  6 customers/clients
68.4 Noun  Adjective  Noun  Adjective
excitement  exciting  prestige  prestigious
glamour  glamorous  luxury  luxurious
competition  competitive  reliability  reliable
fashion  fashionable  danger  dangerous

Unit 69
69.1 Possible answers
1 cards, musical instruments, board games
2 stamps, coins, antiques
3 hiking, rock climbing, jogging, hunting, camping
69.2 1 photography  4 jogging  7 DIY
2 collecting antiques  5 makes her own clothes
3 playing a musical instrument  6 chess
69.3 1 go  3 made  5 do  7 joined
2 took up; gave it up  4 collects  6 play  8 do

Unit 70
70.1 head it; pass it; catch it; drop it; throw it; hit it; kick it
70.2 Possible answers
1 tennis, table tennis, squash, badminton (shuttlecock), cricket, baseball, hockey
2 football, rugby, American football, hockey, basketball
3 rugby, American football, cricket, baseball, basketball
4 football, rugby
5 football
70.3 Sport  Place  Equipment
swimming  pool  trunks (men); costume (women)
football  pitch  boots, shorts; goals; net (for the goal); whistle (referee)
motor racing  track  crash helmet
golf  course  clubs
boxing  ring  shorts, boots, gloves, vest
tennis  court  racket, shorts, net, training shoes
70.4 1 false (they are the crowd/spectators) 5 true
2 true
3 true
4 true
6 false (it is played on a court)
7 true
8 false (they wear a swimming costume)

Unit 71

71.1 Infinitive  Past tense  Past participle
win  won  won
lose  lost  lost
beat  beaten
lead  led  led
catch  caught  caught
draw  drew  drawn

71.2 1 nil-nil  two-one  four all  2 fifteen love  forty thirty  deuce

71.3 1 beat  5 lost  9 set  13 match
2 penalty  6 won  10 lost  14 score
3 score  7 lost  11 set
4 extra time  8 won  12 tie-break

71.4 1 true
2 false (it has a referee)
3 false (it is only decided on a tie-break if the score reaches 6–6)
4 true
5 true
6 false (it is still in progress)
7 true
8 false (if you lose you are out of the competition)

71.5 1 rugby  3 tennis  5 motor racing  7 swimming
2 football  4 basketball  6 football  8 athletics

Unit 72

72.1 1 stalls  2 C  3 yes  4 no

72.2 1 musical  3 the audience  5 director  7 reviews  9 to book
2 the cast  4 clap  6 critics  8 subtitles  10 stars

72.3 1 Dirty Harry could be described as an action film or a thriller.
2 Blade Runner is a science fiction film.
3 Four Weddings and a Funeral is a comedy.
4 Schindler’s List could be described as a war film or a thriller.
5 Dances with Wolves is a western.

Unit 73

73.1 1 Tolstoy – novelist  7 Verdi – composer
2 Wordsworth – poet  8 Mick Jagger – singer and songwriter
3 Ibsen – dramatist  9 Nascimento – singer-songwriter
4 Mishima – novelist  10 Paul Tortelier – cellist
5 Chekhov – dramatist  11 Paul Simon – singer and songwriter
6 Mozart – composer  12 Mark Knopfler – singer, songwriter, guitarist

234 English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate)
13 Henry Moore – sculptor
14 Borges – novelist and short story writer
15 Picasso – painter
16 Saki – short story writer
17 Bernstein – composer and conductor
18 Giacometti – sculptor

73.2 pianist; guitarist; drummer; violinist; cellist; flautist
73.3 1 a landscape 2 a portrait 3 an abstract
73.4 1 orchestra 5 write; performs/plays
2 group/band; solo artist 6 opera
3 classical; composer 7 novel
4 exhibition; gallery 8 play

Unit 74
74.2 Minister to leave his job / resign
Government reduces spending ...
New attempt/try to reduce ...
Bad weather has a terrible effect on farmers
Germany supports ...
Minister in argument about tax
Police discover important witness
Japan and US enter fresh discussions

Unit 75
75.1 1 Could you turn it up, please?
2 Could you turn/switch over?
3 Could you turn it down?
4 Could you turn/switch it off?
75.2 Documentary: Cutting Edge and World in Action
Game show: Bruce’s Price is Right (The Krypton Factor is also a game show)
Quiz show: Telly Addicts
Drama series: Cracker
Current affairs: World in Action
The soap operas are: Coronation Street and EastEnders.
The comedy series is Two Point Four Children.

Unit 76
76.1 Possible answers
phone number; phone card; phone box; telephone directory; answerphone; on the phone
76.2 A 1 My name is 2 message 3 out / not here
4 ring you / call you back 5 number
B 6 Is that 7 afraid 8 be back 9 leave (a) message
10 phone me / ring me / ring me back
C 11 Is that 12 it’s 13 rang 14 get through 15 engaged 16 on
Unit 77

77.1 Possible answers
1 software 5 computer-literate 9 laser printer
2 a word processor 6 keyboard 10 laptop
3 floppy disk 7 a computer program/programmer/game 11 spreadsheet
4 user-friendly 8 CD-ROM 12 e-mail

77.2 1 cut 4 open a new document 6 copy
2 print 5 open an existing document 7 paste
3 save the data in this document

77.3 1 computer 3 down 5 back-up 7 cut 9 save
2 printed 4 save 6 graphics 8 graphics 10 back-up

Unit 78

78.1 1 Maths 3 Science 5 Technology 7 Art 9 French
2 History 4 English 6 Geography 8 Music 10 Economics

78.2 1 3 4 16 7 They leave
2 5 5 French and German 8 Go to university or get a job
3 comprehensive 6 12

78.4 1 to school 3 to bed 5 to church
2 into hospital 4 to university

Unit 79

79.1 1 medicine 3 agriculture 5 business studies 7 politics
2 architecture 4 psychology 6 history of art 8 law

79.2 1 a grant 3 undergraduates 5 graduates 7 research
2 degree 4 lecturers 6 postgraduates 8 lecture

79.3 1 doing 3 get 5 doing 7 make
2 get 4 go to 6 doing/conducting 8 lasts

Unit 80

80.1 3, 9, 7, 8, 2, 6, 4, 1, 5

80.2 1 the police 3 prisoners 5 barristers (lawyers)
2 the judge 4 the jury 6 criminals

80.3 1 broken; committed 3 fine 5 guilty 7 convicted; sentence
2 against 4 prove 6 evidence 8 offence

80.4 1 Yes
2 Visit the people who were broken into and take fingerprints if possible.
3 Probably not
4 burglary
5 No, not at 15.
6 Probably a suspended sentence (= the boys are free but if they commit another crime in the next year or two years, they will receive a much tougher punishment) unless the boys already have a record for burglary. In this case, they could be sent to a centre for young offenders.
Unit 81

81.1 Crimes

murder
robbery
rape
manslaughter
shoplifting

People

thief
barrister
burglar
judge
criminal

Places

prison
cell
court

81.2

1 burglary
2 with murder
1 carry
2 allowed/able

3 charged with shoplifting
4 with manslaughter

3 punishment
4 spray

5 charged with theft
5 defence

6 reduce/cut

81.4

Unit 82

82.1 Abstract noun

person

Politician

Politics

democracy

dictatorship

Socialism

Conservatism

Labour

Liberalism

Adjective

political

democratic

dictatorial

Socialist

Conservative

Liberal

82.2

1 elections
2 Prime
3 votes

4 parliament
5 system
6 party

7 majority
8 form
9 power

Possible reasons to justify this system are:

One single party has power, so there is little compromise which produces a strong government; there is a single set of policies; the government has a majority and so is relatively stable and does not need to call elections often.

Unit 83

83.1

1 identity/landing card
2 birth/marriage/exam certificate

3 driving/TV licence
4 application/enrolment/registration form

83.2

1 get/obtain
2 checked
3 fill in

4 sign
5 runs out / expires; renew
6 queues

7 enrolment/registration

83.4

1 when were you born?
2 Where do you come from?
3 Are you single or married?

4 When did you arrive?
5 When are you leaving?

83.5 Problems mentioned were:

1 long queues
2 waiting in one queue, then you discover you should be in another queue
3 delays e.g. in getting a new passport
4 officials putting the wrong information on documents, which then need to be changed, e.g. driving licence
5 officials losing information you have given them
6 being asked to explain the same information over and over again to different officials, especially over the telephone
7 spending a long time getting a document in one country, then you discover that nobody is interested in it when you arrive in another country
8 officials who act like policemen

Unit 84

84.1
1 ally = friendly country
2 release = permit to go free
3 conflict = strong disagreement
4 troops = large group of soldiers
5 invade = enter another country by force and in large numbers
6 wound = injure from fighting
7 territory = land controlled by a country
8 ceasefire = stop fighting

84.2
1 carry on fighting / continue to fight 4 mostly civilians
2 they will retreat 5 release them
3 run out of food

84.3 First mention repeated as ...
ordinary people civilians
soldiers troops
shelling firing
hit wounded
allow them to enter let anyone in
captured take control of
soldiers army

84.4 Possible answers
1 Terrorists use hostages for bargaining, e.g. they release hostages if governments give them money or release political prisoners. Hostages also give the terrorists protection.
2 Some governments refuse on moral grounds, i.e. they believe it is wrong to bargain with hostages. Some governments believe that if you agree to terrorists demands on one occasion, terrorists will attack again.

Unit 85

85.1
1 the ozone layer 5 industrial or human waste
2 global warming 6 tropical rainforests
3 acid rain 7 a bottle bank
4 exhaust fumes 8 natural or human resources

85.2
Noun Verb Noun Adjective
waste waste damage damaging
protection protect environment environmental
destruction destroy harm harmful (≠ harmless)
pollution pollute danger dangerous
damage damage safety safe

85.3
1 plants and animals 4 carbon dioxide
2 smoke from factories 5 destroys the ozone layer
3 the earth
85.4 We should: recycle paper etc.; save/keep/protect tropical rainforests; plant more trees; save water and energy
We shouldn’t: throw away paper etc.; destroy the ozone layer; waste water and energy; cut down tropical rainforests

85.5 1 false  2 true  3 true  4 true  5 true

Unit 86

86.1 1 boarding card  6 duty free
2 baggage reclaim  7 overhead locker
3 excess baggage  8 take-off
4 passport control  9 departure lounge
5 hand luggage  10 check-in

86.2 1 check-in  5 hand luggage  9 terminal building
2 boarding card  6 overhead locker  10 baggage reclaim
3 excess baggage  7 runway
4 departure lounge  8 stewards (or cabin crew)

86.3 1 took off  3 fasten  5 landed  7 flight
2 captain/pilot  4 flew  6 get off

Unit 87

87.1 7, 9, 2, 4, 12, 8, 5, 6, 10, 11, 1, 3

87.2 Possible answers
1 I’d like to book a double room for two nights for next Thursday and Friday, please? or
   Do you have a double room free for next Friday and Saturday?
2 Could I have my bill, please? or Could you order a taxi for me, please?
3 Could I have a call tomorrow morning at 7 a.m., please?
4 Could you put it on my bill, please?
5 I’m afraid there’s something wrong with the shower in my room. or
   I’m afraid the shower in my room isn’t working very well.
6 How do I get to the nearest bank from here? or
   Could you tell me the way to the nearest bank, please?

Unit 88

88.1 1 great/lovely time  4 a look  7 lost  10 spent
2 sightseeing  5 souvenirs  8 market  11 taken
3 packed  6 galleries  9 go out

88.3 Possible answers
1 Yes, it’s a great place.
2 Yes, it’s very cosmopolitan.
3 Yes, it was absolutely packed.
4 Yes, the night-life is fantastic.
5 Yes, we had a great time.
Unit 89

89.1 Possible answers
sunshine; suntan; suntan lotion; sun cream; sunburn; sunglasses; sunbed; sunbathe; sunlight; sunblock; sunset; sunrise; sunshade; sunstroke

89.2
1 sandy beach 3 beach umbrella 5 sunbathe 7 big waves
2 suntan lotion 4 rough sea 6 seaside 8 steep cliff
1 to spend time on the beach
2 because they want a suntan
3 to protect yourself from the sun
4 to protect themselves and also help to get a suntan
5 very painful
6 surfing

89.3
1 get away 3 quiet 5 walk/stroll
2 country/countryside 4 lie/sunbathe 6 picnic

89.4
1 resort 3 lying/sunbathing 5 picnic
2 different/various 4 rent 6 quiet

Unit 90

90.1
1 at 3 at 5 on 7 on 9 on 11 in
2 in 4 in 6 at 8 at 10 at 12 on

90.2
1 hy 3 since 5 during 7 in 9 throughout
2 until 4 for 6 for 8 during 10 for

90.3
1 two 3 1963 5 ten
2 17th 4 12 hours 30 minutes 6 1960s

90.4
1 a few days ago 4 for ages
2 for the time being 5 a long time ago
3 recently/lately

Unit 91

91.1
1 four hundred and sixty-two
2 two and a half
3 two thousand three hundred and forty-five
4 six point seven five
5 nought point two five
6 three and a third
7 one million two hundred and fifty thousand
8 ten point oh four
9 forty-seven per cent
10 the tenth of September or September the tenth
11 the third of July or July the third
12 six oh two eight four seven seven or double seven
13 five degrees below zero or minus five degrees centigrade
14 nineteen oh three or nineteen hundred and three
15 eighteen seventy six
2.3 thousand  4 two-hundred-and-twenty  5 the-thirty-first-of-August
2.4 two  6 seven-twenty-five  7 the-twenty-five  8 out-of-forty  9 of  10 nine

Unit 92

2.2 Possible questions
How tall is she?
What size shoes does she take?
How high is the mountain? / What's the height of the mountain?
How far is it from one side of the lake to the other?
How big is the lake? / What's the size of the lake?
How deep is it? / What's the depth of the lake?
How long is the pitch? / What's the length of the pitch?
How wide is the pitch? / What's the width of the pitch?

2.3 1 No, he's quite thin.  5 No, it's a great place.
2 No, it's very shallow.    6 No, he's fairly short.
3 No, it's a tall building, actually.  7 No, it's a great big place.
4 No, it's quite narrow.

Unit 93

3.1 1 a rectangular table  6 an oval-shaped plate
2 a star-shaped ring  7 diamond-shaped earrings
3 a round window  8 a striped sofa
4 a check shirt  9 a pointed nose
5 a tartan tie  10 light grey jeans

3.2 1 pencil/pen  6 the sea
2 salmon  7 an egg
3 football/rugby/hockey pitch or tennis court  8 a 'warning' triangle
4 carrot  9 a coat hanger
5 moon  10 a square

Unit 94

4.1 1 bottle  3 bowl  5 packet  7 tin
2 jug  4 box  6 bag  8 jar

4.2 Probable answers
The most surprising and unlikely are: a vase of coffee; a tube of cigarettes; a carton of toothpaste. It may also be quite unusual to have a 'glass of soup'.

4.3 1 bunch (also 'bouquet')  7 group
2 gang  8 team
3 slices (also pieces and bits)  9 piece (also bit)
4 piece (also bit)  10 drop (also bit)
5 bit  11 pair
6 sheet (also piece and bit)  12 bit
94.4 Wrong answers
1 none
2 sheet
3 gang (gang would be appropriate if you have a negative view of journalists)
4 group
5 none
6 piece

Unit 95

95.1 1 ripe 4 water 7 photo 10 washing powder
2 new 5 sore 8 donkey 11 doorbell
3 horrible 6 fresh 9 cod 12 silk

95.2 Possible answers
1 looks sad.
2 looks/feels soft.
3 tastes horrible.

95.3 1 listening to; heard
2 heard
3 hear
4 look at
5 watch
6 listening
7 touch
8 press
9 hold
10 watch (‘look’ is also possible here but less likely); see

Unit 96

96.1 Possible answers
Please queue other side
Beware of pickpockets
Mind the step
Mind your head
Sold-out
Please do not disturb; Please do not feed the animals
Out of order
No exit; No smoking; No parking
Keep right; Keep off the grass

96.2 Possible answers
1 In a Bed & Breakfast (cheap hotel) 5 Public telephone
2 On the underground 6 Theatre or cinema
3 Customs at an airport or port 7 On the outside of a parcel/package
4 Bank or post office 8 In a park

96.3 1 Please do not feed the animals 5 Do not lean out of the window
2 Do not leave bags unattended 6 No smoking
3 Please do not disturb 7 Keep right; No smoking; No exit
4 No parking 8 Mind your head
Unit 97

97.1 Possible answers
1 a type of perfume or after shave
2 the key
3 whisky
4 knife and fork
5 flour
6 programme
7 clothes or belongings
8 a type of toy
9 a suitcase
10 shampoo or conditioner

97.2 Possible additions
A: How many people were at the conference?
B: Roughly 400.
A: Did you enjoy it?
B: Yes, sort of.
A: You don’t seem very sure.
B: Well, there were some good things, but it was a bit too long.
A: And did you go to John’s talk?
B: Naturally.
A: How did it go?
B: Well he was sort of nervous at the beginning, but he soon got more confident and I think it went really well.
A: Did he have a big audience?
B: About 75.
A: That’s good, isn’t it?
B: I think John was a bit disappointed – he wanted at least a hundred.

97.3 Possible answers
1 more or less
2 a bit
3 sort of
4 more or less/roughly
5 sort of
6 a bit / sort of

Unit 98

98.1
1 American (because of vacation): fall
2 American (because of high school): semester
3 British (because of biscuits): sweets
4 American (because of garbage): trashcan
5 British (because of trousers): waistcoat
6 American (because of truck): highway
7 Probably American (because of apartment): elevator
8 British (because of fortnight): holiday
9 American (because of subway with this meaning): parking lot
10 British (because of trainers): wardrobe

98.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>British</th>
<th>American</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>holiday</td>
<td>vacation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trousers</td>
<td>pants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flat</td>
<td>apartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trainers</td>
<td>sneakers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary school</td>
<td>high school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biscuits</td>
<td>cookies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rubbish</td>
<td>garbage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main road</td>
<td>highway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortnight</td>
<td>two weeks / fourteen days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underground (tube)</td>
<td>subway</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
98.4 1 queue 2 curtains 3 reverse charge call 4 barrister 5 bill

**Unit 99**

99.1  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Formal</th>
<th>Informal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>purchase</td>
<td>handy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resume</td>
<td>loo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thus</td>
<td>terrific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>commence</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apprehend</td>
<td>reckon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>guy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

purchase/buy; handy/convenient; loo/toilet; resume / start again; thus/therefore; terrific/fantastic; quid/pounds; commence/start; apprehend/catch; reckon/think; guy/man

99.2 1 When are you going to pick up your bike?
2 Most of the kids are very bright.
3 I reckon it’ll start pretty soon.
4 Do you fancy going out for a meal?
5 My flat is five minutes from where I work, so it’s very handy.
6 What’s up?
7 The guy in the market wanted 20 quid for this ring.
8 Where did you buy/get that book?
9 They’ll never catch him.
10 I’m just going to the loo.

99.3 We regret to inform you that we are unable to lend you the sum of £500 that you require, but it may be possible to grant you a loan for part of the sum.
If you are still interested, would you like to contact our main office to arrange an appointment with the assistant manager. He will be happy to discuss the matter further.

99.4 1 attend *(fml)* = go to 4 bloke *(infml)* = man
2 a drag *(infml)* = boring 5 permitted *(fml)* = allowed
3 pinched *(infml)* = stolen

**Unit 100**

100.1 1 British Broadcasting Corporation 5 Prime Minister
2 Member of Parliament 6 United Nations
3 European Union 7 United Kingdom
4 Value Added Tax 8 Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries

100.2 Michael
Pete had a maths exam this afternoon and then he had to take his bike to the repair shop, so he’ll probably a bit late home. You can watch TV while you’re waiting for him and please help yourself to anything from the fridge. If there’s a problem (e.g. Dr Brown rings about the flu vaccination) my phone number is next to the photos on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about 5 p.m.
Margaret (Peter’s mum)
PTO stands for 'please turn over' at the bottom of a page.
RSVP means 'please reply' (from the French 'respondez, si'il vous plait') and is found at the bottom of formal invitations e.g. to a reception or wedding. The French do not use this expression or abbreviation however.
c/o stands for 'care of'. You put this on an envelope when the person you write to does not live at the address on the letter but can be reached there.
asap stands for 'as soon as possible' and is commonly used in faxes; the letters are read individually a-s-a-p.
## Phonetic symbols

### Vowel sounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/i/</td>
<td>sleep, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɪ/</td>
<td>happy, recipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/a/</td>
<td>pin, dinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/u/</td>
<td>foot, could, pull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/u:/</td>
<td>do, shoe, through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/e/</td>
<td>red, head, said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ə/</td>
<td>arrive, father, colour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔ/</td>
<td>turn, bird, work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔ:/</td>
<td>sort, thought, walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/æ/</td>
<td>cat, black</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʌ/</td>
<td>sun, enough, wonder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɜ/</td>
<td>got, watch, sock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/u:/</td>
<td>part, heart, laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/eɪ/</td>
<td>name, late, aim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/əɪ/</td>
<td>my, idea, time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔɪ/</td>
<td>boy, noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/eə/</td>
<td>pair, where, bear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɜə/</td>
<td>bear, beer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/əʊ/</td>
<td>go, home, show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɔʊ/</td>
<td>out, cow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/uə/</td>
<td>pure, fewer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Consonant sounds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/p/</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/b/</td>
<td>book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/t/</td>
<td>take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/d/</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/k/</td>
<td>car, kick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ɡ/</td>
<td>go, guarantee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʃ/</td>
<td>catch, church</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/dʒ/</td>
<td>age, lounge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/f/</td>
<td>for, cough</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/v/</td>
<td>love, vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/θ/</td>
<td>thick, path</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ð/</td>
<td>this, mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/s/</td>
<td>since, rice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/z/</td>
<td>zoo, houses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʃ/</td>
<td>shop, sugar, machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ʒ/</td>
<td>pleasure, usual, vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/h/</td>
<td>hear, hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/m/</td>
<td>make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/n/</td>
<td>name, now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/ŋ/</td>
<td>bring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/l/</td>
<td>look, while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/r/</td>
<td>road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/j/</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/w/</td>
<td>wear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Pronunciation problems**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>when ‘a’ is /ei/</th>
<th>when ‘u’ is /ʌ/</th>
<th>when ‘i’ is /ai/</th>
<th>when ‘o’ or ‘oo’ is /ʌ/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>patient</td>
<td>punctual</td>
<td>pilot</td>
<td>gloves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asia</td>
<td>luggage</td>
<td>virus</td>
<td>oven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>dial</td>
<td>month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pavement</td>
<td>discuss</td>
<td>hepatitis</td>
<td>front</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bacon</td>
<td>function</td>
<td>minus</td>
<td>monkey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phrase</td>
<td>publish</td>
<td>licence</td>
<td>government</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>engaged</td>
<td>customs</td>
<td>diet</td>
<td>worry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunbathe</td>
<td>luck</td>
<td>striped</td>
<td>flood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lately</td>
<td>bankrupt</td>
<td>tiny</td>
<td>blood</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When ow is /au/ e.g. row (= line), throw, blow, show, know, elbow
When ou or ow is /au/ e.g. lounge, drought, row (= argument), towel, allowed, blouse, shower
When ou is /u:/ e.g. soup, group, through, wound, souvenir, routine
When ou is /ʌ/ e.g. cousin, couple, trouble, tough, rough, enough
When a, au or aw is /ʌ:/ e.g. draw, raw, law, stall, fall, cause, audience, launch, exhausted
When a or au is /ai/ e.g. vase, calm, laugh, draughty, half
When a or u is /ai/ e.g. busy, business, minute, lettuce, purchase, surface, orange, damage
When o is /a:/ e.g. move, prove, improve, lose
When or or ur is /a:/ e.g. purple, burn, burglary, word, work, curtain
When ea is /e/ e.g. dreadful, jealous, health, dead, bread, instead, pleasant, weather, weapon

**Silent letters** (the underlined letters are silent):
- island, knee, knife, know, knock, knowledge, wrong, wrist, muscle, castle, whistle, fasten, listen, bomb, lamb, thumb, comb, scissors, psychology, honest, hour, cupboard, answer, guess, handsome, aisle, half, calm, christmas, mortgage

**Short syllables** (the underlined letters often disappear or are only a /ʌ/):
- fattening; miserable; comfortable; fashionable; restaurant; strawberry, eventually, parliament, actually occasionally, prisoner, medicine, favourite, temperature, literature

**Problem pairs:**
- quite /kwaiˈt/ and quiet /ˈkwaiət/  
- desert /ˈdezət/ and dessert /ˈdesət/  
- soup /sʌp/ and soap /səʊp/

**Note:** The pronunciation of these letters at the end of words is often like this:
- ous /əʊs/ e.g. famous, dangerous, unconscious, ambitious, cautious, jealous
- age /ədʒ/ e.g. luggage, baggage, village, damage, cabbage, bandage, message, manage, garage
- able /əbl/ e.g. comfortable, reliable, suitable, unbreakable, vegetable, fashionable, miserable
- are /əə/ e.g. care, spare, square, beware, stare, fare, aware, rare(ly), barely
- ile /aɪl/ e.g. fragile, mobile, file, while
- tory /təri/ e.g. directory, history, secretary, documentary
- ture /tʃʊər/ e.g. picture, signature, departure, capture, temperature, literature, feature
- ate /eɪt/ at the end of verbs e.g. educate, operate, communicate
- ate /ət/ at the end of nouns and adjectives e.g. graduate, approximate, certificate
comprehensible 9
commercialize 78
computer 66 /kəmˈpjuːtə/ computer-literate 77
/-ˈlɪtərət/
conductor 73 /kənˈdəʊktrə/
confirm 29 /kərnˈfɜːm/
conflict 84 /kənˈflikt/ confused/confusing 30
/kənˈfjuːzd/ /kənˈfjuːzin/
congratulations 26
/kənɡrəˈɡʌltʃənz/
consequently 36
/kənˈsekwəntli/
conservation 85
/kənˈzɜərveɪʃən/ consumer 68 /kənˈsjuərər/ country 37 /ˈkʌntri/
country of origin 83
/kənˈtraiəri/ courgette 58 /kɔːˈɡɛt/ couch 5, 54 /kʌf/
Could I speak to ...? 76
Could I/you (possibly) ...? 24
country(side) 89
/kənˈtraiəri/ country of origin 83
/kəntraiəri/ court/law 60 /kɔːt/ course (training) 19, 65
/kɔːs/ course (food) 59 /kɔːs/ court (justice) 80 /kɔːt/ court (sport) 70 /kɔːt/
cousin 46 /ˈkʌzn/ cowboy 72 /ˈkaʊboʊ/ crab 58 /kræb/
/ˈkræfˌhælmət/ crash into 61
creative 9 /ˈkriːətɪv/ creature 40 /ˈkriːtʃə/ credit card 11
cricket 70 /ˈkrɪktɪ/ crime prevention 81 /ˈkrɪm/ critic 72, 74 /ˈkrɪtɪk/
crop 39 /krɒp/ crowd 70 /kraud/ crowded 30, 60 /ˈkraudid/
/ˈkərət/ ~ affairs 75
curtain (theatre) 72 /ˈkærən/ curtains 50 /ˈkærəntz/ cut 55, 74, 77 /kʌt/ cut down 85
daily 74 /ˈdeɪli/ dairy 39 /ˈdeəri/ damage 85 /ˈdæmɑːd/ damaging 85 /ˈdæməɡɪŋ/
dangerous 9 /ˈdændʒərəs/ dark 8, 43, 49, 93 /daːk/ darkness 8 /ˈdæksnəs/
date 91 /deɪt/ date of arrival/departure 83
date of birth 83
def 22 /def/ deal with 63 /dɪˈəl/ decade 90 /dɪˈkɛdʒ/ decide 28 /dɪˈsайд/
decimal 91 /ˈdɛsɪməl/ deep 92 /dɪp/ defeat 71 /dɪˈfɛt/ defend 84 /dɪˈfɛnd/ defendant 80 /dɪˈfɛndənt/
degree 79 /dɪˈɡriː/ degrees (e.g. centigrade) 38
/dɪˈɡrɪz/ delay(ed) 23 /dɪˈleɪd/
deliver 66 /dɪˈlɪvə/ democracy 82 /dɪˈməʊkraj/
division 91 /dr'víasn/
Do you think you could ...?
24
do/don't 96
do (a bit of / lots of) hiking, etc. 69
do (the) housework 19
do a course 19, 65
do a subject 19, 78
do homework 3, 19
do overtime 63
do research (in/into) 19, 79
do something/nothing 19
do the ironing 48
do the shopping 19, 48, 57
do the washing 48
do the washing-up 48
do well 67
do-it-yourself (DIY) 69
document 77, 83
/dänk'C'mánt/
documentary 75
/dänk'jamen'tari/
don't worry 23
doorbell 49 /'dr亲密l/ 
double room 87
/ïk'skeiəs/
down (the computer's down) 77 /daon/
down 31 /daon/
down in the dumps 18
downmarket 68
/dâon'mækit/
Dr 100 /dr'kta/
drag 99 /'dræg/
drama series 75 /'dræmə/
dramatic 67 /'dra:mətɪk/
dramatist 73 /'dra:mətɪst/
drapes (US) 50 /'drepz/
drafty 49 /'dra:fti/
draw (n, v) 71 /drəʊ/
drawers 66 /'draəz/
drawing 73 /'draɪŋ/
dreadful 30 /'dridfəl/
dream (n, v) 10 /'drɪm/
drinkable 9 /'drɪŋkəbl/
driving licence 83 /'draɪvɪŋ /
larins/
drop (n) 94 /drɒp/
drop (v) 52
drought 37, 39 /'drɔ:t/
drummer 73 /'drʌmə/
drums 73 /'drʌmz/
dry weather 13
dubbed 72 /'dʌbd/ 
due to 36, 62 /da: tju:/
dumping 85 /'dæmp/) 
during 90 /'djəuən/ 
Dutch 41 /'dʌtʃ/ 
duty-free 86 /'dju:stɪ fri:/
duvet 51 /'dju:vət/
e-mail 77 /'iː miəl/
eg. 100 /'iː dʒi:/
eagle 40 /'ɪɡəl/ 
earrache 54 /'tɔreti:k/ 
early morning call 87
early twenties/thirties etc.
47
earn 63 /'ɔːn/ 
earrings 11, 56 /'ɔrɪŋz/
ext 37 /'ɛst0/ 
exthquake 37 /'æθkwikt/ 
extasy-going 12 /'ɪzi: ɡəʊŋ/ 
extonomic policy 82
/ɪkə'nomɪk/ 
extonomic stability 67
exemotional 9 /ɪkə'nomɪkəl/
execonomics 78 /ɪkə'nomɪkəs/
execomist 8 /ɪkə'kɒmɪst/
extor /'kɒmɪst/
extor /'kɒmɪst/
editor 74 /'edɪtə/
education 5, 78, 79
/edʒək'ʃən/
extective 1 /'ɪfektɪv/
extor Egyptian 41 /'ɪdʒipt/ 
extor Egyptian 41 /'ɪdʒipt/ 
extor Egyptian 41 /'ɪdʒipt/ 
extor elbow 42 /'elbəʊ/ 
extor elderly 47 /'eldəli/
ext 8, 82 /'ɪлект/
extion 8, 82 /'ɪlekʃən/
extrical appliances 57
/ɪ'lɪktrɪklə ˈplæntəns/ 
extricalian 64 /'elɪktrɪʃən/ 
extricalian 64 /'elɪktrɪʃən/
extricalian 64 /'elɪktrɪʃən/
elevator 40 /'elɪfənt/ 
expansion (US) 98 /'elɪvətə/ 
ebarrassed/embarrassing
30, 45 /'ɪm'bærəst/ 
/ɪm'bærəst/ 
embarrassment 45
/ɪm'bærəsmənt/
emergency services 64
/ɪ'mɛʤənsi/
emotional 44 /'ɪmɔʃənəl/
exter 65 /'ɪm'ploʊə/ 
exter 65
/'ɪm'ploʊənt/
exteged 76 /'iŋ'ɡeɪdʒd/ 
extegineer 64 /'endʒɪnɪər/ 
extegineering 79 /'endʒɪˈnɪəriŋ/ 
exteny 28 /'iŋˈdʒəʊri/ 
extenyable 9 /'iŋˈdʒəʊriəbl/
exerious 30, 49 /'ɪnˈmæs/ 
zeug 5, 56 /'ɪnfl/ 
extrol 83 /'ɪnˈraʊl/ 
extrolment form 83
environment 85
/inˈvækərənt/ 
extimator 37 /'ɪkˈweɪətə/
extipment 27, 70
/inˈkwɪpmənt/ 
etc. 100 /'iː setərə/
EU 100 /'iː ju:/
even 91 /'ɪvən/ 
even though 34
eventually 33 /'iːventjuəli/ 
exvidence 80 /'iːvidəns/
ex- 46 /'eks/
exam 100 /'ɡəʊzm/ 
exam 66 /'ɡəʊzmən/ 
except (for) 35 /ɪkˈsept/ 
excess baggage 86
/ɪk'ses ˈbægɪdʒ/ 
exted/exciting 30, 68
/ɪkˈseptəd/ /ɪkˈseptɪŋ/ 
excuse 23 /ɪkˈskjuːs/ 
excuse me 26 /ɪkˈskjuːz mi/ 
exhaust fumes 85 /'ɪgˈzaʊst /
fjumz/ 
exhausted/exhausting 30
/ɪgˈzaʊstəd/ /ɪgˈzaʊstɪn/ 
extimation 73 /'eksɪˈbɪfən/ 
extand 67 /ɪkˈspend/ 
exting (a baby) 47
/ɪkˈspɛkt/ 
expect (think) 28 /ɪkˈspekt/ 
extpenditure 67 /ɪkˈspendɪtʃə/ 
extensive 53 /ɪkˈspensiv/ 
extpire 83 /ɪkˈspɛrɪ/ 
extplain 29 /ɪkˈsplɛn/ 
extent 25 /ɪkˈstɛnt/ 
exttra time 71 /ˈekstrə taim/ 
exttract 39 /ˈekstrækt/ 
extreme 82 /ɪkˈstrɪm/
factory 60, 85 /fæktəri/ 
fair 43 /fɛə/ 
fairly 32 /fɛəli/ 
fall (n, v) 67 /fɔːl/ 
fall asleep 48 /fɔːl/ 
fall in love 47 /fɔːl/ 
fall over 16 /fɔːl/ 
fall slowly/sharply 2 /fɔːl/ 
fall (n) (US) 98 /fɔːl/ 
falls 37 /fɔːlz/ 
family name 46 

famous 9 /'feɪməs/ 
fancy 99 /'fænsi/ 
far 92 /fɑː/ 
fare 62 /fɛə/ 
farewell 26 /fεər'wel/ 
farmer 8 /'fɑːmə/ 
farming 39 /fɔːrnɪŋ/ 
fascinated/fascinating 30 

/fæsɪnɪtɪd/ /fæsɪnɪtɪŋ/ 
fascism 82 /fæsɪzəm/ 
fascist 82 /fæsɪst/ 
fashion 68 /fæʃən/ 
fashionable 68 /fæʃənəbl/ 
fasten 5 /fʌsən/ 
fasten your seat belt 61, 86 
fat 43, 92 /fɑːt/ 
father-in-law 11, 46 
fattening 5, 59 /fætənɪŋ/ 
fatty 59 /'fæti/ 
faucet (US) 98 /fɔːstɪt/ 
favourite 75 /'feɪvərɪt/ 
fear 45 /fɛə/ 
features 74 /fiˈfɪəz/ 
feel (n, v) 95 /fɪl/ 
feel like ... 18, 28 
feel sick 54 

feels + adj; feels like + noun 95 
fence 49 /fens/ 
field 60 /fiːld/ 
fifteen-minute (drive) 12 
fifty-pence piece 53 
fight crime 81 /fætʃ/ 
file (for papers) (n, v) 6 

/fɔːl/ 
files 66 /fɔːlz/ 

inglish Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate)
garbage (US) 98 /'gɛrɪbi/ 
gas(oline) (US) 98 /'ɡæsəli:n/ 
gate 49, 60 /'ɡeɪt/ 
generous 44 /'dʒenərəs/ 
geography 78 /dʒi'ɡræfɪ/ 
German 41 /dʒə'mən/ 
Germany 41 /dʒə'məni/ 
get (arrive/become/fetch/obtain/buy/receive) 21 
get a move on 18 
get away 89 
get better/worse/hot, etc. 21 
get by 17 
get changed 21 
get divorced 21 
get dressed 7, 21, 56 
get home 48 
get in 62 
get in touch with 99 
get into (a car) 13, 61 
get into bed 51 
get lost 21, 88 
get married (to) 14, 21, 47 
get off/on (a bus) 13, 62 
get on (make progress) 21 
get on (with sb.) 16, 21 
get out (of a car) 62 
get over (an illness) 16 
get ready 21 
get rid of 21 
get through (make contact) 76 
get through (finish) 16 
get through (pass an exam) 16 
get to know 21 
get to sleep 48 
get to work 48 
get undressed 7, 21 
get up 21, 48 
giraffe 40 /dʒə'raːf/ 
girlfriend 47 /'ɡaɪrlfrɛnd/ 
give (a lecture) 79 /'ɡɪv/ 
give one's regards to sb. 20 
give sb. a hand 20 
give sb. a push 10 
give sb. a ring 10, 20, 76 
give sb. the sack 65 
give up sth. 16, 28, 69 
glamour 68 /'ɡleɪmə/ 
glamorous 68 /'ɡleɪmərəs/ 
glance (at) (n, v) 45 /'ɡlæns/ 
global warming 85 /'ɡləʊbəl ˈwɔːrmɪŋ/ 
gloves 2 /'ɡluːvz/ 
go (travel) 22 
go (leads to / takes you) 22 
go (out) for a walk/meal/drink etc. 22 
go ahead 18 
go along here 61 
go bald/deaf.grey/mad 22 
go bankrupt 22 
go into hospital 78 
go off (explode / go bad / ring) 16 
go on a (training) course 65 
go on a diet 10 
go on a tour of ... 88 
go on holiday 89 
go out 88 
go out with sb. 47 
go shopping/sightseeing etc. 22, 37 
go to bed 48 
go to church/school/college 78 
go to sleep 51 
go to university 47, 78, 79 
go up (increase) 16 
go upmarket/downmarket 68 
goat 40 /'ɡəʊt/ 
gold 39 /'ɡɔːld/ 
golf /'ɡɔːf/ ~ course 70 
good (at) 14 
good fun 72 
good-looking 12, 43 
good luck 26 
good morning/afternoon/evening/night 26 
good value 68 
goods 66 /'ɡudz/ 
gorilla 40 /'ɡɔːrɪlə/ 
government 82 /'ɡʌvərnənt/ 
gratual(ly) 67 /'ɡrædʒjuəl/ 
graduate 79 /'ɡrædʒuət/ 
grandfather 46 /'ɡrændfɑːðə/ 
grandmother 46 /'ɡrænmɑːðə/ 
grant 79 /'ɡrænt/ 
grapes 58 /'ɡreɪps/ 
grapics 77 /'ɡræfɪks/ 
grass 39 /'ɡrɑːs/ 
great 13, 30, 92 /'ɡreɪt/ 
Greece 41 /'ɡriːs/ 
Greek 41 /'ɡrɪkit/ 
green beans 58 
greengrocer 57 /'ɡriːnɡrɔːsə/ 
greens 85 /'ɡrɛnz/ 
greetings 26 /'ɡretɪŋz/ 
grey 93 /'ɡriː/ 
grill 59 /'ɡrɪl/ 
gripping 72 /'ɡrɪpɪŋ/ 
ground 39 /'ɡraʊnd/ 
ground floor 49 
group (collection) 94 /'ɡruːp/ 
group (pop group) 73 
grow 39, 67 /'ɡrəʊ/ 
grow up 17, 47 /'ɡrəʊ/ 
guess (n, v) 10 /'ɡes/ 
guest house 87 /'ɡest/ 
guidebook 88 /'ɡaɪdbʊk/ 
guilty 80 /'ɡɪlti/ 
guitar 69, 73 /'ɡɪtər/ 
guitarist 73 /'ɡɪtərɪst/ 
guns 84 /'ɡʌnz/ 
guy 99 /'ɡaɪ/ 
guys (US) 98 /'ɡaɪz/ 
hair 27 /hɛə/ 
hairy (chest) 43 /'heəri/ 
half 91 /'hɑːf/ 
half board 87 
hand 42 /'hænd/ 
hand luggage 86 
handsome 43 /'hændzəm/ 
handy 99 /'hændi/ 
hang on 18 
hang sth. up 56 
hangover 54 /'hæŋəʊvə/ 
happiness 8, 45 /'hæpiːnəs/ 
Happy Birthday / Christmas / New Year 26 
hard disk 77 
hard luck 26 
hard work 13 
hardly 32 /'hɑːdlɪ/ 
hardly ever 32 
hardware 77 /'hɑːdweɪ/
hardworking 44
harmed 85
harvest 39
hate 28
have a baby 19
have a break 48
have a dream 10
have a drink 19
have a go 22
have a good/great time 19, 88
have a lie-in 48
have a look 10, 50
have a nice weekend 26
have a party 19
have a rest 10, 19, 48
have a shower/bath/wash/shave 19, 48
have a word (with) 99
have an early/late night 48
have breakfast 48
have friends for dinner 48
have something to eat 19
have something/anything in
common 35
hay fever 54
head (v) 70
headache 54
headline 74
headphones 27
health 54
healthy (economy) 67
hear 95
hearing 95
heart 54
heart attack 54
heat (v) 49
heat (n) 38
heavy rain 13, 38
heavy smoker 13
heavy traffic 13
Hebrew 41
hedge 60
heel 42
height 43, 92
held up 23
help yourself 24
helpful 9
hepatitis 54
high 92
high school (US) 98
highlight pen 6
highlights 75
highly (unlikely) 13
highway (US) 98
hijacking 84
hiking 69, 89
hips 42
hire 86
historical monuments 88
history 78
history of art 79
hit 70
hit (affect badly) 74
hobby 69
hockey 70
hold (an election) 82
hold 95
hole punch 6
holiday pay 63
Holland 41
home news 74
homeless 9
homesick 3
homework 27
honest 44
hoover 51
hope 28
horror film 72
hospitality 23
hostage 84
household (goods) 57
housework 3, 27, 51
How about ...? 24
How are you getting on? 21
How are you? 26
How do I get to ...? 87
How do you do? 26
How do you feel about ...? 25
How do you pronounce ...? 6
How do you spell ...? 6
How do you use ...? 6
How long/tall/wide is ...? 92
How much does he/she weigh? 43
How tall is he/she? 43
How's it going? 22
however 34
huge 30, 49
human resources 85
humid 38
humidity 38
hundred 91
hunting 69
hurry up 16
hurt (oneself) 54
hyphen 4
I agree with you 25
I beg your pardon 23, 26
I don't mind 24
I don't think ... 25
I regret to inform you 99
I think you’re right 25
I was wondering if ...? 24
I won’t be long 23
I'd love to 24
I'd prefer to / I'd rather ... 24
I’ll clear it up 23
I’ll leave it 57
I’ll sort it out 23
I’ll take it/them 57
I’m (terribly/very/so) sorry
I’m afraid I can’t 24
I’m afraid not 24
I’m being served 57
I’m just looking 57
I’m looking for a ... 57
I’m sorry I’m late 23
i.e. 100
ice 38
ice hockey 70
icon 77
identity card 83
idiom 4
if 24
illegal 7, 80, 81
illegal 7
illness 54
image 68
English Vocabulary in Use (pre-intermediate & intermediate) 255
imagine 28 /ɪˈmædʒɪn/
impatient 7 /ɪmˈpeɪʃənt/
impolite 3, 7 /ɪmpəˈlaɪt/ 
impossible 7 /ɪmˈpɒsəbəl/
improve 8 /ɪmˈpruːv/ 
improvement 8 /ɪmˈpruːvmənt/
in (a period) 90
in (Africa) 31
in a good mood 52
in a mess 7
in a moment 15
in a newspaper/magazine 15
in addition 34
in advance 59, 72, 87
in business 15
in case 35
in charge of 63, 65
in front of 31
in good/bad condition 49
in my opinion 25
in other words 100
in power 82
in recession 67
in short supply 39
in spite of 34
in the countryside 60
in the dark suit / red dress 15
in the end 15, 33
in the long term 18
in the morning/afternoon/ evening 15
in the short term 18
in the wild 40
in time 15
in your twenties/thirties etc. 47
income 63 /ˈɪŋkəm/
income tax 11, 63
incomprehensible 9 /ɪnˈkʌmprəhensəbəl/
in correct 7 /ɪnˈkɔrɛkt/
increase (n, v) 10 /ɪnˈkriːs/
incredibly 32, 53
/inkrɛdəbli/
industrial 9 /ɪnˈdʌstriəl/
infinite 4 /ɪnˈfɪnətɪv/
inflation 67 /ɪnˈflɛʃən/
inflexible 9, 44 /ɪnˈfleksəbəl/
inform 8 /ɪnˈfɔːm/
information 8, 27
/infəˈmeɪʃən/
information technology 78
inherit 46 /ɪnˈhɛrɪt/
initiative 44 /ɪnɪˈteɪtɪv/
initiative 44 /ɪnɪˈteɪtɪv/
injection 54 /ɪnˈdʒekʃən/
injure 54 /ɪnˈdʒʊər/
injury 55 /ɪnˈdʒərɪ/
innocent 80 /ɪnˈsʌnt/
insect 40 /ɪnˈsekt/
insensitive 44 /ɪnˌsɛnsətɪv/
insist (on) 29 /ɪnˈsɪst/
inspect 66 /ɪnˈspekt/
instead 48 /ɪnˈsted/
interest 67 /ɪnˈtræst/
interest rate 67
interested (in) 5, 14, 30
/inˈtræstɪd/
interesting 30 /ɪntræstɪŋ/
internet 77 /ɪntəˈnet/ 
into 31 /ɪnto/
invade 84 /ɪnˈvɛɪd/
investigate 80 /ɪnˈvestɪɡeɪt/
investment 67 /ɪnˈvestmənt/
invisible 7 /ɪnˈvaɪzəbəl/
invoice 66 /ɪnˈvoʊs/
involves 63, 65 /ɪnˈvɔlv/ 
iron 39, 51 /aɪrən/
ironing 48 /aɪrənɪŋ/
irregular (verbs) 7 /ɪˈrɛɡjʊlər/ 
Is that...? (phone) 76
island 37 /ˈaɪlənd/
Israel 41 /ɪˈzrəeil/
Iraqi 41 /ɪrˈeɪl/ 
it doesn’t matter 23
Italian 41 /ɪtəˈliən/ 
Italy 41 /ɪtəli/ 
itm 94 /aɪtəm/ 
jacket 56 /ˈdʒækɪt/
Japan 5, 41 /dʒaˈpæn/
Japanese 5, 41 /dʒəˈpænəˈnɪz/ 
jar 94 /dʒɑː/ 
jaw 45 /dʒeləs/ 
jealousy 45 /dʒeləsɪ/ 
jeans 27, 56 /dʒɛnz/ 
jobless 9 /dʒəˈblɛs/ 
jog 8 /dʒɒɡ/ 
jogging 8, 69 /dʒɒɡɪŋ/ 
join (the army/the police) 64
journalist 74 /dʒʊˈnɪlist/ 
joystick 77 /dʒɔɪstɪk/ 
judge 80 /dʒʌdʒ/ 
jug 94 /dʒʌɡ/ 
jumper 56 /dʒʌməp/ 
junction 61 /dʒʌŋkʃən/ 
jungle 37 /dʒʌŋɡəl/ 
jury 80 /dʒʊɔrɪ/ 
just as 33
just round the corner 92
keep (on) 14 /kiːn/
keep (going/getting/losing) 20, 61 /kiːp/
keep + noun/pronoun + adjective 20
keep a record 20
keep an eye on sth./sb. 18
keep in touch 20
keep off the grass 96
keep right/left 96
kettle 50 /ˈkɛtəl/ 
key (adj) 74 /ˈkiː/ 
keyboard 66, 77 /ˈkɪbɔːd/ 
kick 70 /kɪk/ 
kids 99 /kaɪdz/ 
kind 44 /kaɪnd/ 
kitchen 50 /ˈkɪtʃɪn/ 
knee 5, 42 /niː/ 
knitting 69 /ˈnɪtnɪŋ/ 
knock (on a door) 45 /nɒk/ 
knock oneself unconscious 55
knock-out 71 /ˈnɒkəut/ 
knowledge 27 /ˈnɒlɪdʒ/ 
knowledgeable 9 
/nəˈlɑːdʒəbəl/ 
Korea 41 /ˈkærə/ 
Korean 41 /ˈkærən/ 
lab 100 /læb/
labour 67 /ˈleɪbə/ 
lake 37 /leɪk/ 
lamb 40, 58 /læm/ 
lamp 50, 51 /læmp/ 
land (v) 86 (n) 39 /ˈlænd/ 
landing card 83, 86 
landlord 49 /ˈlændərd/ 
landscape (painting) 73 /ˈlændskɛp/
lan 61 /leɪn/ language lab 100 /læŋgwɪdʒ /læb/ laptop 77 /ˈlæptɒp/ laser printer 77 /ˈleɪtə/ last (v) 79 /ˈlaːst/ last 90 /ˈlaːst/ late arrival 62 late at night 81 /ˈlaːt/ late twenties/thirties etc. 47 lately 90 /ˈleɪti/ latest 71 /ˈleɪtɪst/ laugh (n, v) 10, 42 /ˈlɑːf/ launch 68 /ˈlɑːnʃ/ law 79 /lɔː/ law and order 3, 80 lawyer 64 /ˈleɪər/ lazy 44 /ˈleɪzi/ lead 71 /liːd/ lead (electrical) 6 /liːd/ lead to 36 league 71 /liːɡ/ lean 59 /liːn/ leave a job (resign) 65 /liːv/ leave a message 76 leave home/work (depart) 48 leave lights on 81 leave out (omit) 17 leave sb. (permanent separation) 47 leave sth. behind (forget sth.) 52 leaves (on a tree) 39 /ˈlɛvz/ lecture 79 /ˈlɛktrɪk/ lecturer 64, 79 /ˈlɛktrɪkər/ left-wing 82 /ˈlɛftwɪŋ/ lemon 58 /ˈlemən/ lend 53 /lɛnd/ length 92 /ˈlɛŋθ/ leopard 40 /ˈlɛpəd/ lesson 78 /ˈlesən/ let (sb. do sth.) 28 /ˈleɪt/ lettuce 58 /ˈletɪs/ liberal 82 /ˈlɜːral/ liberalism 82 /ˈlɜːralɪzm/ library 60 /ˈlaɪbrəri/ licence 75 /ˈlɑːnsəs/ lie (on the beach) 89 /lai/ lie down 16, 17 lie in bed 48 lift 49, 87, 98 /lɪft/ light (colour) 93 /lɑːt/ lightning 38 /ˈlaɪtnɪŋ/ like 28, 95 /lɑːk/ line (phone) 76 /lain/ line (US) 62 /lain/ line judge 70 lion 40 /laiən/ lips 42 /ˈlɪps/ listen (to) 14, 95 /ˈlɪsn/ literature 73 /ˈlɪtrərɪ/ live (adj) 75 /lɪv/ lively 88 /ˈlɪvli/ liver 54 /ˈlɪvər/ living room 50 /ˈlɪvin/ loan 67 /loon/ lobster 58 /ˈlɑbsta/ local call 76 /ˈləʊkəl/ lock 7 /lɒk/ long 92 /lɒŋ/ long distance call 76 loo 99 /luː/ look (at) 95 /lʊk/ look after sb. 16, 64 look round (e.g. the shops) 88 look up (a word) 6, 16 looks + adj; looks like + noun 95 lorry 61, 62 /ˈlɔːri/ lose (a game) 3, 71 /laʊz/ lose sth. (e.g. money) 52 lose weight 3 loss 67 /lɒs/ lounge 50 /lɑʊndʒ/ love (tennis) 71, 91 /lɑːv/ love 28 /lɑːv/ luggage 27, 86 /ˈlæɡɡɪdʒ/ lung 54 /lʌŋ/ lung cancer 54 luxury 68 /ˈlʌkʃəri/ luxurious 68 /ˈlʌkʃərɪəs/ MA 79 /em ə/ machine 5 /məˈʃɪn/ mad about sb./sth. 69 main course 59 main road 61 maintain 1 /ˈmeɪntən/ majority 82, 91 /məˈdʒorəti/ make a decision 2, 19 /meɪk/ make a loss 67 make a meal of 19 make a mess 2 make a mistake 2, 13, 19 make a profit 67 make coffee 50 make do (with) 18 make friends 19 make it 18 make money 19 make my own breakfast/dinner 48 make my own clothes 69 make notes 79 make (sb. do sth.) 28 make up (a story) 17 make up your mind 18 manage (be able to) 28 /ˈmeɪndʒ/ manage (a shop) 8 /ˈmeɪndʒ/ management 8 /ˈmeɪndʒmənt/ manager (sport) 70 /ˈmeɪndʒə/ Mandarin (also Cantonese) 41 /ˈmændərɪn/ manslaughter 81 /ˈmeɪndʒstə/ manual 64 /ˈmeɪnjʊəl/ manufacture 66 /ˈmeɪnʃər/ Many Happy Returns 26 map 88 /meɪp/ march (walk) (n, v) 45 /ˈmaːtʃ/ marital status 83 /ˈmeɪntəl ˈsteɪtʃəs/ market 88 /ˈmaːkɪt/ marketing /ˈmaːrkɪtɪŋ/ -mix 68 market leader/research/share 68 /ˈmaːkɪt/ marriage 47 /ˈmeɪndʒ/ marvellous 30 /ˈmɔːrələs/ mass-produced 68 /ˈmeɪnsprəˈdʒʌst/ match 71 /meɪtʃ/ maths (mathematics) 78, 100 /meɪθ/
maybe 25 /mɛɪbi/ 
mean (adj) 44 /miːn/ 
mean (v) (intend/plan) 28 /miːn/ 
mechanic 64 /məˈkænɪk/ 
medicine 79 /ˈmɛdθəns/ 
medium (meat) 59 /ˈmiːdθəm/ 
medium-height 43 
meetings 63 /ˈmɪtɪŋz/ 
melon 58 /ˈmelən/ 
menu 59 /ˈmɛnuː/ 
message 76 /ˈmɛsɪdʒ/ 
metal 39 /ˈmɛtəl/ 
Mexican 41 /mɛkˈsɪkən/ 
Mexico 41 /mɛkˈsɪkəʊ/ 
mice 40 /ˈmeɪs/ 
mid twenties/thirties etc. 47 
middle age 47 
middle name 46 
middle of the road 82 
million 91 /ˈmɪljən/ 
mind 28 /ˈmɪnd/ 
mind the step / your head 96 
mining 39 /ˈmɪnɪŋ/ 
minor (offence) 80 /ˈmɪnər/ 
minority 91 /ˈmɪnərətɪ/ 
minus 38, 91 /ˈmɪnəs/ 
mirror 51 /ˈmɪrər/ 
miserable 44 /ˈmɪzərəbl/ 
misread 7 /ˈmɪstrəd/ 
miss a lesson 13 /ˈmɪs/ 
miss a person 13 
miss the bus 13, 52, 62 
misunderstand 7 /ˈmɪsʌnˈstænd/ 
mobile (phone) 76 /ˈmɔbɪl/ 
motor racing 70 /ˈmɔtə/ 
motorbike 62 /ˈmɔtəbaɪk/ 
motorway 61 /ˈmɔtərweɪ/ 
mountain 37 /ˈmɔntən/ 
mountain range 37 
mouse (computer) 
~ mat 77 /ˈmaʊs/ 
mouse (animal) 40 /ˈmaʊs/ 
moustache 43 /ˈmaʊstəʃ/ 
moving 72 /ˈmuːvɪŋ/ 
MP 100 /em piː/ 
MPHil 79 /em fil/ 
Mr 100 /ˈmɜːtə/ 
Mrs 100 /ˈmɪsəz/ 
Ms. 100 /ˈmez/ 
multiplication 91 /ˈmʌltəplɪˈkeɪʃən/ 
multiply 91 /ˈmʌltɪplai/ 
murder (n, v) 10, 81 /ˈmɜːdər/ 
murderer 81 /ˈmɜːdərər/ 
muscular 43 /ˈmʌskjʊlər/ 
mushroom 58 /ˈmʌʃrəm/ 
music 73 /ˈmjuːzɪk/ 
musical 9, 72 /ˈmjuːzɪkəl/ 
musical instrument 69, 73 
mussels 58 /ˈmæsəlz/ 
narrow 92 /ˈnærəʊ/ 
natural (resources) 85 /ˈnætʃərəl/ 
navy 64 /ˈneivi/ 
necklace 56 /ˈnekˌklɑːs/ 
neck 42 /ˈnekt/ 
necessary 5 /ˈnɛsəsəri/ 
neck 42 /ˈnekt/ 
nephew 46 /ˈnɛfjuː/ 
net 70 /ˈnet/ 
ever 32 /ˈnevə/ 
never mind 18, 23 
newsagent 57 /ˈnjuːzəˈeɡənt/ 
nice to meet you 26 
niece 46 /ˈnɪs/ 
night life 60, 88 
nil 71, 91 /ˈnɪl/ 
nine-to-five job 63 
no exit/parking/smoking/ vacancies 96 
nod 42 /nɒd/ 
noisy 49, 60 /ˈnɔɪzi/ 
north-east/west 12 
north/south pole 37 
notebook 6 /ˈnɔʊtbʊk/ 
notes (money) 53 /ˈnɔʊts/ 
otice (n) 96 /ˈnətɪs/ 
oticeboard 66 /ˈnəʊtɜːbɔːd/ 
nought 91 /ˈnɔːt/ 
noun 4 /ˈnɔːn/ 
novel 73 /ˈnɔvəl/ 
novelist 73 /ˈnəʊvəlɪst/ 
nurse 64 /ˈnɜːs/ 
nursery school 78 /ˈnɜːsrɪ/ 
ocasionally 32 /ˈsɪklənli/ 
ocean 37 /ˈɔːʃən/ 
opt. 91 /ˈɒpt/ 
of course 24 
off-hand 18 
offence 80 /ˈɔfʃəns/ 
offer 28 /ˈɒfdər/ 	often 32 /ˈɒfən/ 
oh 91 /əʊ/ 
OHT 6 /ˈaʊt ˈeɪt tiː/ 
oil 58 /ˈaɪl/ 
old age 47 
old friend 46 
on (a day) 90 
on (the table) 31 
on business 15 
on condition that 35 
on foot 15 
on holiday 15 
on one’s own 15, 48, 81 
on purpose 15 
on strike 15 
on the ground/first floor 49 
on the left/right 82 
on the other hand 34 
on the phone 15, 76 
on the radio 15 
on the sofa 50 
on time 15 
on TV 15 
only child 46 
OPEC 100 /ˈoʊ peɪk/ 
operator 76 /ˈɒpərətər/ 
operator (on) 64 /ˈɒpəret/
run out (of sth.) 16, 52, 83, 84
runny nose 54 /'ra:nri/
runway 86 /'ra:nwei/
rushed (to hospital) 55 /'raft/
rush-hour 61 /'ra:fu:/
Russia 41 /'ra:fi/.
Russian 41 /'ra:fi:n/.
sack 65 /'sæk/
sadness 45 /'sædnəs/
safe (n) 81 /'sefl/.
sailor 64 /'seilə/
salad 58 /'sæləd/
salary 63 /'seiləri/
sales 68 /'seiləz/
sales figures/forecast 68
manager/target 68
sales rep 68, 100
salmon 58 /'sæmən/
salt 59 /'sɔlt/
salty 59 /'sɔlti/
same to you 26
sand 89 /'seind/
satellite 75 /'seitələt/
satellite dish 75
sausage 50 /'seizpæn/
Saudi Arabia 41 /'sæudi
ə'reiba/.
Saudi Arabian 41 /'sæudi
ə'reibən/.
save (data) 77 /'si:vi/
save (up) 16, 53 /'si:vi/
saxophone 69, 73
/'sæksəfəun/
saxophonist 73
/'sæksəfonist/
say (the paper / TV says
that ...) 25 /'set/
say cheese 26
scales 27 /'skeləz/
scar 43 /'skər/
scarce 39 /'skerz/
scarf 56 /'skɔ:t/
science 78 /'sentsibəl/
sensible 44 /'sentsibəl/
sensitive 44 /'sentsativ/
sentence (prison) 80
/'sentiŋ/
series 75 /'səriizi/
series (cinema) 72 /'skrəin/
sculptor 73 /'skəlpta/
sculpture 73 /'skəlpə/
sea 37 /'si:/
seafood 58 /'si:fju:d/
seaside 89 /'si:zəd/
season 87 /'si:zon/
seat 3 /'si:t/.
seats (in parliament) 82
second (n) 90 /'sekənd/
second (ly) 33 /'sekəndli/
second-hand 12
secondary (school) 78
/'sekəndri/.
see 95 /'si:/
see (understand / find out) 20
see you later/soon 26 /'si:/
seem 28 /'si:m/
seldom 32 /'seldəm/
self-confident 44
self-defence 81
self-portrait 73
self-study 1
semester (US) 98 /'sti:məsə/
semi-circle 93
send off (a letter) 16 /'send/
senses 95 /'sensiz/
sensible 44 /'sentsibəl/
sensitive 44 /'sentsativ/
sentence (prison) 80
/'sentiŋ/
series 75 /'səriizi/
sery (serious) 13 /'siəriəs/
set 71 /'set/.
set the alarm 51
shad 93 /'feid/.
shake 42 /'feik/
shake hands 42
shallow 92 /'feiəou/.
shape 93 /'feip/
shark 40 /'fɔk/
sharp(ly) 67 /'fɑ:pli/
shore (of paper) 94 /'fələ/
shelling 84 /'fein/
shiftwork 63 /'ʃiftwor:k/.
shirt 56 /'ʃirt/.
shoot 55 /'ʃtʊt/.
shop assistant 57
shop window 57
shoplift 81 /'ʃəplift/.
shoplifter 81 /ʃəʊplɪtə/
shoplifting 81
shopping centre 57, 60
shopping list 57
short 43, 92 /ʃɔrt/
short story 73
short-cut 18
short-sleeved 12
shorts 27 /ʃɔrts/
shoulders 42 /ʃəʊldəz/
shout (at sb. / to sb.) 14, 45
/ʃaut/
show 29 /ʃəʊ/
show sb. (a)round 66 /ʃəʊ/
shower (rain) 38 /ʃəʊər/
shower (wash) 51 /ʃəʊər/
showery 38 /ʃəʊəri/
shrimps 58 /ʃrɪmps/
shy 44 /ʃaɪ/
sick pay 63
sidewalk (US) 98 /ˈsaɪdwaːk/
sight 95 /sɑɪt/
sightseeing 88 /ˈsaɪtˌsiːŋ/
sightseeing tour 88
sign 83 /ˈsaɪn/
signature 83 /ˈsaɪɡnətʃər/
silence: exam in progress 96
silent (ly) 1 /ˈsaɪləntli/
silence 39 /ˈsaɪləns/
similar (to) 8, 14, 35
/ˈsɪmələ/
similarity 8 /ˈsaɪmlərəti/
since 36 /sɪns/
since 90 /sɪns/
singer 73 /ˈsɪŋər/
single room 87
single-parent family 46
sink 50 /sɪŋk/
sister-in-law 11, 46
sit down 16 /sɪt/
sitting room 11
size 56 /saɪz/
skiing 70 /ˈskiːŋ/
skilled 64 /skɪld/  
skinny 43 /ˈskɪnɪ/
skirt 56 /ˈskɜːt/
slang 99 /slæŋ/
slaughter 39 /ˈslɔtə/
sleeves 56 /ˈslɛvz/
slice 94 /slaɪs/
slightly 32 /ˈslætli/
slim 43 /slɪm/
sling 55 /slɪŋ/
slopes 70 /sləʊps/
slow (boring) 72 /sləʊ/
slow (ly) 67
small talk 18
smell (n, v) 10, 95 /smɛl/
smells + adj; smells like + noun 95
smile (n, v) 2, 10, 42 /smiːl/
smoke 85 /ˈsmɔːk/
snack 48 /ˈsnæk/
nail 40 /ˈsnɛɪl/
nake 40 /ˈsnɛɪk/
sneakers (US) 98 /ˈsnɪkəz/
sneeze 54 /ˈsnɛɪz/
some (that) 36
soap 51 /ˈsoʊp/
soap opera 75
soccer (US) 70 /ˈsɒkər/
socialism 82 /ˈsəʊʃəlɪzəm/
socialist 82 /ˈsəʊʃəlist/
sociology 79 /ˈsəʊʃələdʒi/  
socket 6 /ˈsɒkɪt/
soda 50 /ˈsoʊdə/  
soft drink/voice 13
software 77 /ˈsɑːftweər/
soil 39 /soɪl/
sold out 96
soldier 64 /ˈsəʊldər/
solo artist 73
something wrong (with) 14
sometimes 32 /ˈsʌmtaɪmz/
songwriter 73 /ˈsɒŋwaɪtər/  
sore throat 54 /ˈsɔːr θroʊt/  
sorry 26 /ˈsəri/
sorry to keep you waiting
23
sort of 97
sort sth. out 17
sound (n, v) 95 /ˈsaʊnd/  
sounds + adj; sounds like + noun 95
south-east/west 12
souvenir 88 /ˈsəʊvərɪn/  
Spain 41 /ˈspæn/  
Spanish 41 /ˈspænɪʃ/  
spare room 50
speak up 97
spectators 70 /ˈspektətəz/
speed limit 61
spend (money) on 14, 53, 88
spicy 59 /ˈspæsɪ/  
spider 40 /ˈspɪdər/  
spikes 70 /ˈspɪks/
spill 52 /ˈspɪl/  
split (up) 47 /ˈsplɪt/  
spray 81, 85 /ˈspreɪ/
spreadsheet 77 /ˈspredʃiːt/  
square 93 /ˈskweər/
squash 70 /ˈskwɔʃ/  
St. 100 /ˈstrɪtʃ/ /ˈsɛnt/  
stab 55 /ˈstæb/  
stability 67 /ˈsteɪbɪləti/  
stadion 70 /ˈstɛdɪəm/  
stage 72 /ˈstædʒ/  
stage 52 /ˈstɛɪn/  
stairs 27, 49 /ˈstɛəz/  
stalls 72 /ˈstɑːlz/  
stamp (v) 83 /ˈstɛmp/  
stamps 69 /ˈstɛmpz/  
stand up 16 /ˈstænd/  
standard 66 /ˈstændəd/  
standard of living 53
stare (n, v) 45 /ˈstɛər/  
star (film) 72 /ˈstɑː/  
star (in the sky) 37 /ˈstɑː/  
start a car 13 /ˈstɑːt/  
start a family 13
starter 59 /ˈstɑːtər/  
starving 30 /ˈstɑːvɪŋ/
stater system 78 /ˈstæt/  
station (TV) 75 /ˈstɛɪʃn/  
stationery 57 /ˈstɛɪʃnəri/  
statue 88 /ˈstɛɪfju:/  
status 68 /ˈstɛrtəs/  
stay (at school) 78 /ˈstɛɪ/  
stay in 17, 48 /ˈstɛɪ/  
steady/steadily 67 /ˈstɛdɪ/  
/ˈstɛdɪli/  
steal 81 /ˈstɛl/  
steel 39 /ˈstɛl/  
steep 89 /ˈstɪp/  
stepfather/mother 46
steps 49 /ˈstɛps/  
sterling 53 /ˈstɛrliŋ/  
sticks 70 /ˈstɪks/
sweet 59 /swiːt/ 
swimming 70 /ˈswɪmɪŋ/ 
~ costume 70
Swiss 41 /swɪʃ/
switch sth. on/off/over 75 /ˈswɪtʃ/
Switzerland 41 /ˈswɪtsəʊlənd/ 
swollen 55 /ˌswɔːlən/ 
syllable 4 /ˈsɪləbəl/
symptom 54 /ˈsɪmptəm/ 
synonym 4 /ˈsaɪnənim/

T-shirt 11
table tennis 11, 70 /ˈteɪbl/ 
tabloid 74 /ˈtæблəid/ 
take 22, 90 /teɪk/ 
take a bus/train/taxi 19 
take a decision 2, 19 
take a photograph 2, 19 
take a shower 2, 19 
take an exam 19 
take control (of) 84 
take it in turns 18 
take notes 79 
take off (leave the ground) 16, 17, 86 
take off (remove) 16, 56 
take over 65 
take photographs 88 
take place 82 
take the first/second turning on the left/right 61 
take time 2 
take up (a hobby) 69 
take-off (n) 86 /ˈteɪkəf/ 
talks 74 /tɔːks/ 
tall 43, 92 /tɔːl/ 
tan 89 /tæn/ 
tartan 93 /ˈtɑːtən/ 
taste (n, v) 10, 95 /teɪst/ 
tastes + adj; tastes like + noun 95 
tasty 59 /ˈteɪstɪ/ 
taxi cut 67 
taxi (v) 86 /teɪksi/ 
taxi rank 62 
team 70 /teɪm/ 
teenager 47 /ˈtiːnɪdʒə/ 
telephone directory 76 /ˈtelɪfaʊn ˈdɪˈrektrɪ/ 
tell 29 /tel/
tell a joke/story 13 
tell the truth 13 
telly 100 /ˈteɪli/ 
temperature 38 /ˈtemprərəʊ/ 
temple 88 /ˌtempəl/ 
ten-pound note 33 
ten-year-old (boy) 12 
tender 59 /ˈtenədə/ 
tennis 70 /ˈtenəs/ 
ten 44 /ˈtenz/ 
tent 89 /ˈten/ 
term 78 /ˈtɜːm/ 
terminal building 86 /ˈtɜːmɪnl ˈbɪldɪŋ/
terrible (pain) 54 /ˈterəbəl/ 
terribly (sorry) 13 /ˈterəbli/ 
terrific 30, 99 /ˈterɪfɪk/ 
terrified/terrifying 30 /ˈterɪfɪd/ /ˈterɪfɪn/ 
territory 84 /ˈtɛrɪtɔrɪ/ 
terrorism 84 /ˈtɛrərɪzəm/ 
terrorist 84 /ˈtɛrərist/ 
text book 6 
Thai 41 /tʰaɪ/ 
Thailand 41 /ˈtʰaɪlənd/ 
thank you (very much) 23 
thanks 23 /θæŋks/ 
that’s a good idea 24 
that’s to say (i.e.) 100 
that’s true 25 
that’s very kind of you 23 
thief 81 /θeft/ 
therefore 36 /ðeərˈfiːr/ 

thoughtful 9 /ˈθɔːtfəl/ 
thoughtless 9 /ˈθɔːtləs/ 
thousand 91 /ˈθɔːzənd/ 
three-quarters 91 /ˈθɜːkwɔːtər/ 
thriller 72 /ˈθrɪlə/ 
through 5, 31 /θruː/ 
throughout 90 /θruːaʊt/ 
throw 70 /θroʊ/ 
throw away 85
volcano 37 /vol'keinao/
volleyball 70 /'vɒlɪbɔːl/
vomit 54 /'vɒmɪt/
vote (for) 82 /vəut/
wait (for) 14 /weit/
Acknowledgements

I owe a great debt to Gillian Lazar for the extremely meticulous and valuable comments she has made on every single unit in the book, and also for her continued support and encouragement. Others have reported on parts of the manuscript, and for their valuable and supportive feedback I would also like to thank: Phillip N. Hewitt, Mike McCarthy, Geraldine Mark, Karl E. Schuhmacher, Roy Sprenger, Liz Walter.

Much of the material has been piloted in different parts of the world. I would like to thank Mark Appleby (Barcelona, Spain), Helen Barnes (British Council, Barcelona, Spain), Frank Carney (British Council, Pozan, Poland), Cliff Parry (British Council, Athens, Greece), Chris Powell (International House, Pisa, Italy), Sean Power (ELCRA Bell S.A., Geneva, Switzerland), Pat Rich (British Council, Barcelona, Spain), Karen Williams (British Council, Barcelona, Spain). Sean Power and Mark Appleby have not only given me very useful feedback but also valuable suggestions for improving the material.

Geraldine Mark has not only commented on the material, she has also edited it, and with remarkable incisiveness, efficiency, and constant good humour. My thanks to her.

At Cambridge University Press, I would like to thank Jeanne McCarten for the inspiration behind this project; Nőirín Burke for all her work in organising reports and piloting; and Isabella Wigan for her work in collating the final stages of the project.

On the production side, I would like to thank Randell Harris and Nick Newton for their design, Peter Byatt for his illustrations, and the rest of the team at Cambridge University Press.

Finally my thanks, as always, to Ruth Gairns for her support, advice and encouragement.